# ANAESTHETICS

J. STUART ROSS

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 01570383 8

SECOND EDITION

# HANDBOOK OF ANÆSTHETICS

MT
R

# HANDBOOK OF ANÆSTHETICS

BY

J. STUART ROSS, M.B., CH.B., F.R.C.S.E.

LECTURER IN PRACTICAL ANÆSTHETICS, UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH
HONORARY ANÆSTHETIST, EDINBURGH DENTAL SCHOOL

With an Introduction by HY. ALEXIS THOMSON, C.M.G., M.D., F.R.C.S.E., Professor of Surgery, University of Edinburgh; and Chapters upon Local and Spinal Anæsthesia, by W. QUARRY WOOD, M.D., F.R.C.S.E., Assistant Surgeon, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; and upon Intratracheal Anæsthesia, by H. TORRANCE THOMSON, M.D., Anæsthetist to the Leith Hospital.

*SECOND EDITION*

19541 5
15. 4. 25

EDINBURGH
E. & S. LIVINGSTONE, 16-17 TEVIOT PLACE
1923

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN.

# PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THIS little book is an attempt to present to the student and practitioner a condensed account of modern anæsthetic views and practice. In choosing a general scheme I have tried to lay emphasis upon the relation of anæsthesia to general medical science rather than upon elaborate descriptions of anæsthetic apparatus and methods which a few years hence may be superseded. I have, therefore, devoted the first four chapters to an account of the various forces which modify the physiology of the patient during an operation under a general anæsthetic, in so far as we at present understand them. I trust that they will prove not only a sound basis for the information given in the rest of the book but also a help towards forming a judgment upon new methods and appliances as and when they meet the attention of the reader.

In making a selection of drugs and appliances for description, I have eliminated those which do not appear to me to have any real sphere of usefulness.

The account of nitrous oxide and oxygen has been given in some detail. Both the profession and the lay public have arrived, through the experiences of the war, at a more just appreciation of the possibilities of this combination than was at all general before the year 1914. At the present day, no one who proposes to engage in

anæsthetic work can afford to remain unpractised in its administration.

I have an apology to make to my women readers Throughout the book, when speaking of the anæsthetist I have presumed the male sex. Such phrases as "his or her" and "he or she" are tedious and inelegant, and their omission must not be taken as forgetfulness on the author's part that women frequently make very good anæsthetists.

Professor Alexis Thomson has added to the many kindnesses I have received at his hands by writing the Introduction which immediately precedes this Preface, and I wish to express my sincere thanks to him for such a valuable addition to the book.

From Sir David Wallace, K.B.E., F.R.C.S.E., I have received much valuable help and guidance in anæsthetic matters. It was largely due to his kindly assistance and moral support that I was encouraged to persevere with my early attempts to use nitrous oxide and oxygen in major surgery. The hints which are given in connection with Genito-Urinary Surgery are also derived from him.

The chapters upon Local and Spinal Anæsthesia are entirely the work of Mr Wood, to whom I must express my gratitude for the admirable way in which he has done the work.

I must also thank Dr Torrance Thomson most sincerely for his useful contribution in Chapter X., which constitutes a complete monograph upon Intratracheal Anæsthesia.

To Dr Wm. Guy I am indebted for the photographs

which appear in the book, and I must express my sincere gratitude to him for the trouble he has taken in the matter.

Much thanks are also due to the following firms who have been kind enough to lend illustrative blocks :— Messrs Claudius Ash & Co. Ltd , G. Barth & Co., De Trey & Co., J. Gardner & Son, Allen & Hanbury's Ltd., Meyer & Phelps, Coxeter & Son, Down Bros., Ltd., Krohne & Sesemann, and Mr J. H. Montague.

Lastly, I must express my high appreciation of the courtesy which the publishers have shown to me, and of their generosity in the matter of illustrations.

J. STUART ROSS.

# PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

In preparing this Edition, I have adhered strictly to the plan upon which the first was constructed. A certain amount of new material has been added, and the whole book has been revised and brought up to date.

I have to thank not only the critics of the Public Medical Press, but also many private correspondents, both from Home and Overseas, for some most valuable hints of which I have freely availed myself.

In revising certain Chapters, especially Nos. III., IV., and VIII., free use has been made of the mine of information supplied by Dr J. S. Haldane in his recently published lectures upon "Respiration," which have brought into due perspective a vast amount of work in a branch of physiology of peculiar interest to anæsthetists.

My colleagues, Mr Quarry Wood and Dr Torrance Thomson, have again helped me by revising the chapters which they respectively contributed to the First Edition and which added so much to its value, and so have again placed me deeply in their debt.

I must also thank the following Instrument makers for the kind loan of blocks to illustrate the text:—Messrs Claudius Ash & Co. Ltd., G. Barth & Co., Allen & Hanbury, Coxeter & Son, The Foregger Co. Inc., Down Bros.,

J. Gardner & Son, Hawksley & Son, Meyer & Phelps, Krohne & Sesemann, and J. H. Montague.

Drs Pinson and Ogston were kind enough to supply the illustrations of the apparatuses which they respectively designed and which are mentioned in Chapter IX.

J. STUART ROSS.

52 Murrayfield Gardens,
Edinburgh, *September* 1923.

# INTRODUCTION.

THE securing of a safe anæsthesia during operations is more important than ever before, partly because of the mere number of operations, and partly because of the greater extent to which other operative risks—hæmorrhage, shock and infection—have been overcome. The risk from the anæsthetic is now so very small that the joint aim of the surgeon and anæsthetist to abolish it altogether is not far from being accomplished. The author of this volume has done a good deal to accomplish this end, and it is a matter of congratulation that he has now published an account of his methods, so that a larger circle may benefit from his teaching and his experience.

The author very properly goes further and maintains that anæsthesia must not only be safe but must also be good; good anæsthesia is absolutely vital to good surgery. Only a generation back many surgeons professed to see no difference as to who gave the anæsthetic; at the present day no one willingly embarks upon a difficult operation without the aid of a skilled anæsthetist.

In various parts of the book the author has very rightly laid emphasis upon the influence which the work of the surgeon has upon that of the anæsthetist. The latter may learn much from an occasional glance at the field of operation. He should not interest himself in the details of operative procedure to the distraction of his mind from

his own responsibilities ; but he can, in abdominal surgery, see for himself whether the muscles are properly relaxed, and observe the state of operation, so that he can when necessary deepen the anæsthesia in good time, while not maintaining deep anæsthesia when a light one would suffice. Finally, he can check his other sources of information as to the condition of the circulation by noticing the force with which cut arteries spout, the colour of the blood and the size of uncut veins.

Like other branches of medicine, adequate study as well as practical experience is required in order to master the art of administering anæsthetics, and that a reliable manual of instruction is essential, goes without saying ; I feel on perfectly safe ground in recommending this book as such both to the student and the practitioner.

ALEXIS THOMSON

# CONTENTS.


| CHAP. | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| | Preface to First Edition | v |
| | Preface to Second Edition | ix |
| | Introduction by Professor Alexis Thomson | x |
| I. | Absorption and Physiological Action of Anæsthetic Drugs | 1 |
| II. | Shock and Anæsthesia | 8 |
| III. | Asphyxia (Anoxæmia) and other changes in the Blood Gases | 22 |
| IV. | Methods of Anæsthetising | 44 |
| V. | The Clinical Observation of the Patient | 59 |
| VI. | The Preparation of the Patient | 64 |
| VII. | Nitrous Oxide | 71 |
| VIII. | Nitrous Oxide and Oxygen | 88 |
| IX. | Ether | 113 |
| X. | Intratracheal Ether | 145 |
| XI. | Chloroform | 162 |
| XII. | Ethyl Chloride | 183 |
| XIII. | Mixtures of Nitrous Oxide and Ethyl Chloride | 190 |
| XIV. | Mixtures of Chloroform and Ether | 196 |
| XV. | Sequences | 199 |
| XVI. | Accidents of Anæsthesia | 203 |
| XVII. | Sequelæ of Anæsthesia | 216 |
| XVIII. | Posture of the Patient | 227 |
| XIX. | Anæsthetics in Labour | 235 |
| XX. | Choice of the Anæsthetic | 241 |
| XXI. | Local Anæsthesia | 257 |
| XXII. | Spinal and Sacral Anæsthesia | 287 |
| | Appendix | 302 |
| | Index | 323 |

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS


| FIG. | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Blood-Pressure in Shock (Grey & Parsons) | 9 |
| 2. | Blood-Pressure in Shock (Crile) | 12 |
| 3. | Diagram to illustrate Anoci-Association (after Crile) | 19 |
| 4. | Diagram of the Vicious Circle of Asphyxia | 32 |
| 5. | Hewitt's Mouth Props | 34 |
| 6. | Bellamy Gardner's Mouth Props | 35 |
| 7. | Phillip's Modification of Hewitt's Artificial Air-way | 35 |
| 8. | Silk's Nasal Tube | 36 |
| 9. | Tongue Forceps and Glossotilt | 37 |
| 10. | Apparatus for opening Clenched Jaws | 39, 40 |
| 11. | Nitrous Oxide Cylinder on Frame, with Coxeter Regulator | 72 |
| 12. | Frame for Adapting Vertical Cylinders to Foot Use | 73 |
| 13. | The two types of Nitrous Oxide Cylinders | 73 |
| 14. | Two- angle Cylinders clamped on Frame with Spiked Foot Keys in Position | 74 |
| 15. | Complete $N_2O$ Apparatus | 75 |
| 16. | Barth 3-way Tap | 76 |
| 17. | Hewitt's Wide-bore $N_2O$ Valves | 76 |
| 18. | Coleman's Aseptic Nasal Inhaler (Ash's No. 4) | 86 |
| 19. | Hewitt's Apparatus for Nitrous Oxide and Oxygen | 93 |
| 20. | Details of the Hewitt Mixing Chamber | 94 |
| 21. | Diagram to illustrate the Hewitt and the Teter Methods for Gas-Oxygen | 98 |
| 22. | Clarke's Expiratory Valve | 99 |
| 23. | Clarke Gas-Oxygen Apparatus | 100 |
| 24. | Marshall's Sight-Feed Gas-Oxygen Apparatus | 101 |
| 25. | Boyle's Gas-Oxygen Machine (Hospital Pattern) | 103 |
| 26. | Pressure Gauge for Oxygen Cylinders | 104 |
| 27. | Gwathmey Gas-Oxygen Machine (Portable Form) | 105 |
| 28. | Gwathmey Gas-Oxygen Machine | 109 |
| 29. | Clover's Ether Inhaler, with Nitrous Oxide Attachment | 118 |
| 30. | Diagram of a Vertical Section through Clover's Inhaler | 120 |
| 31. | Hewitt's Wide-bore Ether Inhaler | 122 |
| 32. | Ormsby's Inhaler | 124 |
| 33. | Bellamy Gardner's Mask and Ether Dropper | 126 |
| 34. | Four photographs to illustrate Administration of Open-Ether | 128, 129 |

35. Ogston's Mask for Open-Ether . . . . . 130
36. Shipway's Warmed Ether Apparatus . . . . 137
37. The Pinson Ether Bomb . . . . . 140
38. Details of Pinson's Bomb . . . . . 141
39. Diagram of Intratracheal Apparatus . . . . 148
40. Electric Blower for Intratracheal Anæsthesia . . . 149
41. Kelly's Apparatus for Intratracheal Anæsthesia . . . 150
42. Shipway's Intratracheal Apparatus . . . . 153
43. Hill's Direct Laryngoscope . . . . . 155
44. Connell's Nasal Tubes . . . . . 161
45. Diagram of Various Blood Pressure Curves obtainable with Chloroform . . . . . 164
46. Vernon Harcourt's Percentage Chloroform Inhaler . . 172
47. Levy's Inhaler . . . . . 175
48. Schimmelbusch's Mask . . . . . 176
49. Chloroform Drop-Bottle . . . . . 177
50. Levy's Chloroform Mask Covers . . . . . 178
51. Junker's Inhaler . . . . . 180
52. Ethyl Chloride Tube . . . . . 183
53. Ethyl Chloride Inhaler . . . . . 189
54. Guy's Inhaler . . . . . 190
55. Details of Guy's Inhaler . . . . . 191
56. Diagram of $N_2O$ and $O_2$ Method devised by Dr Guy and Author . . . . . 193
57. Guy-Ross Apparatus . . . . . 194
58. Clover's Inhaler adapted for Ethyl Chloride — Ether Sequence . . . . . 201
59. Sylvester's Artificial Respiration —
*a*. Expiration . . . . . 211
*b*. Inspiration . . . . . 212
60. Sitting-up Posture for Operations upon the Neck . . 230
61. O'Malley's Posture for Intra-Nasal Surgery . . . 231
62. Moseley's Pump for Throat Operations . . . . 247
63. All-Metal Syringe for Infiltration Anæsthesia . . . 265
64. Regional Anæsthesia of Brachial Plexus . . . . 274
65. Needle and Syringe for Spinal Analgesia . . . . 280
66. Position of Patient for Spinal Injection . . . . 291
67. Sagittal Section of Lumbar Vertebræ, with Needle in Position 292
68. Sagittal Section of Sacral Vertebræ . . . . . 299
69. Mott's Dosimetric Anæsthetic Apparatus . . . . 313
70. Chloroform Indicator of Mott Instrument . . . . 316
71. Ether Indicator of Mott Instrument . . . . . 317

# Handbook of Anæsthetics.

## CHAPTER I.

## ABSORPTION AND PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTION OF ANÆSTHETIC DRUGS.

The full action of any drug will not be manifest until it is absorbed into the tissues of the system we are seeking to influence. In the case of inhalational anæsthetics we have then to consider how a vapourised drug such as ether or chloroform brought into the neighbourhood of the patient's mouth is transferred to his brain. We shall find that each step of this transfer takes appreciable time.

The first stage is from inspired air to air of the lung alveoli. For its due completion, free performance of the natural act of external respiration is necessary. The air inspired by the patient will contain a certain proportion of the vapourised drug, but it must be remembered that the volume of that inspiration is only about a fifth of the total volume of air contained in the lungs and air passages. By the time that the normal process of diffu-

sion has carried the anæsthetic into the lung alveoli, considerable dilution of its strength will therefore have taken place, and it will only be after a considerable number of inspirations that the strength of the anæsthetic vapour in the alveoli will approximate to that in the inspired air.

The process of absorption of the anæsthetic vapour from the air of the lung alveoli into the blood is mechanical, not physiological. It depends upon the physical laws which govern the diffusions of gases through a membrane, a process which the student will remember proceeds until the partial pressure of the gas on each side of the membrane is equal. In the case of such vapours as ether and chloroform, the process takes an appreciable time, for the pressure on the one side of the membrane is not so very much higher than that on the other side.* We habitually shorten the period by using during the induction period, as high a strength of the vapour, as we can do with safety and comfort to the patient, but when the requisite saturation of the blood is believed to have been effected, we *gradually* lower the strength of vapour in the level which will maintain equipoise. The reason why this lowering of vapour strength in the atmosphere administered to the patient must be gradual, is that the saturation of the tissues (especially the nerve tissues) with anesthetic withdrawn from the blood stream, is slow—slower than that of the blood from the lung air. During the early part of an administration, the blood is constantly drained,

* Nitrous oxide being given undiluted with air, its partial pressure in the lung alveoli rapidly becomes very high. This anæsthetic is therefore absorbed very rapidly.

as it were, of anæsthetic by the tissues, and if we reduce too rapidly the strength of vapour being administered to the patient, he begins to "come out."

Reaching the blood stream then, by absorption from the lung alveoli, the drug enters into loose combination with the red blood corpuscles; a small part only is carried by the plasma. Within the corpuscles, it displaces a certain amount of the oxygen normally carried; this point is of great importance only in the case of nitrous oxide gas, which displaces the larger part of the Oxygen content of the corpuscles. In the case of other anæsthetics, the same process occurs, but to a less extent. Detailed figures showing the alteration in the composition of the blood gases in the various stages of chloroform anæsthesia, will be found in Appendix III.

The actions of individual drugs upon the circulatory, respiratory, and excretory systems differ so considerably that a small section has been devoted to this subject in each of the chapters devoted to nitrous oxide, ether, and chloroform respectively. One feature is, however, dependent upon the *state of anæsthesia* rather than the action of the particular drug, and that is a certain slight fall of blood-pressure. This phenomenon is seen even in natural sleep, and is presumably due simply to lack of normal stimuli such as tactile, visual, and auditory impressions which in the ordinary circumstances of life, help to maintain the tone of the vasomotor system. That such a fall is due to the *state* of anæsthesia admits of little doubt, but the fact is not always easy to demonstrate since each of the drugs themselves has a marked influence upon

the B.P., which masks the pure effect of the anæsthetic sleep.

## Action upon the Nervous System.

It is in this system, of course, that we look for the characteristic action of anæsthetics, since if we had a choice, it is the brain only which we should desire to influence by our drug. It used to be said that anæsthetics paralyse the brain from above downwards, but that is only approximately true. More correctly we may say that the more highly developed parts of the brain are earliest affected, and that those portions, such as the vital medullary centres, which man shares in common with his humbler zoological relatives, maintain their activity until the last. Moreover, it must be remembered that before any brain centre succumbs, it passes through a preliminary stage of *excitement*, varying in intensity with varying drugs and also with different types of patients. Those who are accustomed to administer to their nervous centres repeated large doses of such nerve poisons as alcohol and tobacco, may show very evident signs of this preliminary cerebral irritation during the process of induction of anæsthesia; so do also the unhappy possessors of nervous systems deranged from other causes such as epilepsy.

*The first centres to be attacked are those of thought and perception.* The patient is incapable of coherent reasoning, and loses touch to some extent with impressions from the outside world. *Muscular sense and co-ordination next become affected.* Although still able to move the limbs or the head, movements are incoherent, and if at this

stage the patient were put upon his feet, he would stagger as he does in alcoholic intoxication. A little later both tactile and special senses begin to be affected. The patient is usually no longer cognisant of pain,—if cut he would at any rate not have a remembrance of pain.* *The special senses* are at this stage also lost, one of the last to go being the auditory sense, a point which is sometimes forgotten by those inclined to talk while anæsthesia is being induced. *Muscle tone is the next function* to be lost, and at this stage all movements on the part of the patient should cease except those of respiration. *The reflexes* disappear at varying stages: the spinal reflexes, *e.g.* the knee-jerks, disappear fairly early, probably before muscle tone is entirely abolished, but certain other reflexes persist to a later stage. Those which are of most interest to the anæsthetist are the conjunctival, corneal, and pupillary reflexes of which he will find full details in Chapter v.

Lastly the *vital medullary centres*, respiratory, vaso-motor, and cardiac are overcome, and at this stage we have passed beyond the stage of a proper anæsthesia into that of over-dosage. In passing it may be observed that the level at which one endeavours to work is that indicated by the loss of muscle tone and of some of the reflexes but the full activity of the medullary centres, and that an anæsthetic is good or bad according as it gives a wide or narrow margin between those two events.

It is probable that anæsthetics have a selective affinity

* This is rather an uncertain phenomenon. Analgesia (loss of pain sensation without complete loss of consciousness) is not always present, and procedures based upon the assumption that it is, are not to be commended.

for nervous as compared with the other tissues to which they are equally conveyed by the blood. In the case of one drug, this has been definitely proved by Nicloux, who estimated the amounts in mgms of chloroform present in various tissues of dogs killed by overdose. The medulla oblongata heads the list with 85 mgms of the drug per 100 gms of tissue; the spinal cord approximates to it with 83.5 mgms. The higher brain showed only 55.5. The distribution of the drug in the brain, if correctly demonstrated by this estimate, is peculiarly annoying, since it is our desire to give as much as we can to the higher centres and as little as possible to the vital centres in the medulla. Of the non-nervous tissues, the highest figure is shown by the liver, with 50.5 mgms, and even the blood yielded only 70 mgms. Ether and chloroform have for fatty substances a very definite affinity and the nervous system is peculiarly rich in lipoids, so that the figures given by Nicloux are not surprising.

Upon the *peripheral nerves*, anæsthetics have much less effect than on the central nervous system. Faradisation of a *motor nerve* will in the deepest anæsthesia still cause immediate contraction of the muscles supplied by it, showing that the conductivity of the nerve is unaffected. Of far more importance, however, is the fact that the *sensory nerves* are not paralysed. That pain is not felt by the patient is due simply to the loss of function of the cerebral sensory centres; *injury to the nerve still causes an impulse to be transmitted to the brain.* Since no operative procedure can be carried out without more or less trauma (injury) to sensory nerves, we may picture

the brain of the patient who is undergoing a surgical operation while under a general anæsthetic, as being constantly bombarded by sensory stimuli which though not consciously appreciated by the sleeping patient, are yet capable of producing reflex effects of a definite character, the importance of which to the work of the surgeon and anæsthetist it is difficult to exaggerate, and of which a condensed account will be found in the succeeding chapter.

## CHAPTER II.

# SHOCK AND ANÆSTHESIA.

UNDER this short and convenient title, the author proposes to discuss all the changes observable in the patient's condition, the causation of which can be traced to the procedure of the surgeon. The use of the term *shock* was at one time, and by some teachers still is, restricted to a definite clinical condition. The patient was described as lying pallid and almost pulseless, with dilated pupils, cold sweating skin, and gasping, irregular respirations. In the view more generally taken to-day, that is but the extreme and final manifestation of a syndrome, which any patient who suffers trauma (whether inflicted accidentally or by the surgeon) exhibits in a greater or less degree, and from which general anæsthesia protects a patient to a very limited extent only.

Professor Crile, to whose work we owe so much of our knowledge on this subject, has said, "In general anæsthesia, part of the brain only is asleep." Though consciousness is abolished, many parts of the brain are quite capable of responding to *centripetal impulses* passed to the brain through sensory nerves injured by the knife. Certain changes have been demonstrated by Crile in cells of the grey matter of the brain as a result of such stimuli,

and a further reference to the significance now attached to them will be found in a later part of this chapter. For the moment it is sufficient to say that such changes have been discovered, and that their occurrence as a result of trauma is not prevented by inhalational anæsthesia. These changes, though of the utmost interest scientifically,

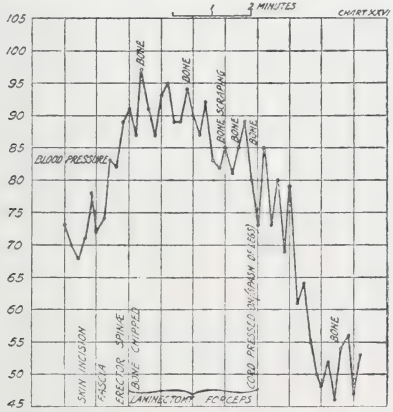



FIG. 1.—Shock—Blood pressure of a dog undergoing laminectomy under general anæsthesia (Grey and Parsons). (*Reproduced by kind permission of the Authors.*)

cannot be demonstrated clinically, and it is to alterations of *blood pressure* and of *respiration* that we must look for clinical evidence of the effects of *shock stimuli*.

Broadly speaking we may say that during an operation each time the tissues are cut or lacerated, a centripetal impulse is sent along a sensory nerve twig which affects reflexly both the level of the blood pressure and the depth

and frequency of respiration. That such changes do commonly occur is easily recognised by clinical observation, for the veriest beginner in anæsthesia soon learns to expect a deeper, quicker respiration and a stronger pulse as soon as the operation has begun. The details of these changes have been studied experimentally upon animals and upon the human subject by the use of the sphygmomanometer: Fig. 1, drawn from Grey & Parson's Arris and Gale Lectures of 1912, shows a tracing from a dog undergoing laminectomy under general anæsthesia, and gives a good idea of the early evidences of shock.

The curve of respiration is not shown upon the particular chart figured, but its general course follows pretty accurately that of the blood-pressure, a fact well worth remembering in ordinary practice where B.P. records are not being taken.

We may condense the results of much work on this subject under the following headings:—

(*a*) Most stimuli from the field of operation cause a sharp rise of blood-pressure, followed by a sharp fall.

(*b*) Successive stimuli delivered quickly one after another add their effects together, the total result being considerably greater than from one severe trauma.

(*c*) After a time, the pressor effect of stimuli begins to lessen: the animal or patient "wears out," and finally no pressor result can be obtained by the most massive stimulation: the curve of B.P. steadily falls: the condition of full surgical shock is produced.

(*d*) The tearing or pulling of tissues produces more powerful stimuli than the use of a sharp knife, and, therefore, brings on the full condition of shock more rapidly.

(*e*) Stimuli from some tissues cause much more reflex effect upon the organism than from other less sensitive structures. This is well exemplified when an abdominal section is in progress. Incision of skin causes immediate response in deepened respiration and higher B.P.: division of the fascia very little effect. If the muscle is divided by the knife, again little reflex effect is noticeable, but if it be stretched and split by the fingers, the response is powerful. The parietal peritoneum, however delicately handled, is one of the most sensitive structures in the body, and, unless the patient is full under at the stage either of opening or closing this layer, actual breath-holding or straining will occur. On the other hand, incision or suture of the hollow viscera will cause practically no response however light the anæsthesia, provided these structures, and their connections with the parietes, are not pulled upon.

(*f*) Stimulation of certain selected areas, of which the spermatic cord is a well-known but by no means the only example, results in an almost immediate fall of blood-pressure with little or no preliminary rise. In the operating theatre, we sometimes see faintness or syncope arising quite suddenly during operations in such regions. This subject is ex-

plained more fully in Chapter XVI., under the term "Reflex Syncope."

(*g*) While no general anæsthetic protects absolutely from shock stimuli, some anæsthetics give more protection than others. Nitrous oxide is the most

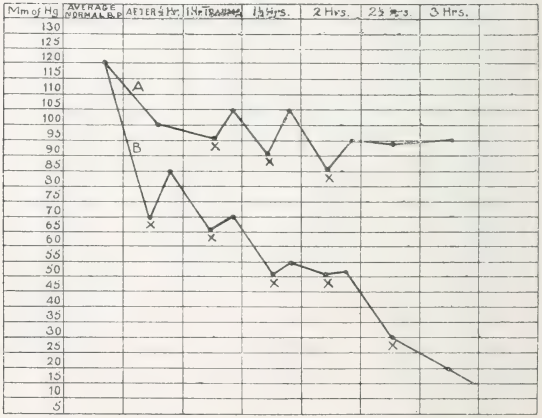



FIG. 2. Combined blood-pressure chart showing the average of a number of experiments.—A—Under nitrous oxide and oxygen. B—Under ether. At each spot marked x, a trauma (burning of the paw) was inflicted. (After CRILE.)

effective in this respect, its powers being two and a half times greater than that of ether: chloroform is even less effective than ether (*see* Fig. 2).

(*h*) The claim made by the older generation of surgeons that shock could be prevented by the use of a *deep* anæsthesia, and that the occurrence of any

"Reflex syncope" was always a sign of too light an anæsthesia cannot be made good. At the same time, it must be admitted that too light an anæsthesia does increase the likelihood of shock. *Prolonged deep* anæsthesia, on the other hand, produces by itself a condition indistinguishable from shock, with the single exception of nitrous oxide gas.

(*i*) Operative shock is predisposed to by several factors of which the following are the most important :—

1. Hæmorrhage before or during operation
2. Sepsis.
3. Fear.
4. Prolonged starvation.
5. Certain diseases, especially hyperthyroidism (exophthalmic goître).

American anæsthetists, notably M'Kesson, have reduced to accurate figures the conception of the relation between pulse rate and blood-pressure, and the degree of surgical shock. They give the following definitions :—

*First degree shock* is that in which there is a 15% increase in pulse rate without change in B.P., or a 10% decrease in B.P. without a decrease in pulse rate.

*Second degree shock* is that of an increase of 25% pulse rate along with 10 to 25% decrease in B.P.

*Third degree shock*, which is the state clinically recognisable as surgical shock, is that in which the pulse rate is 100 or more, accompanied by a falling B.P. reaching the level of 80 mm. of Hg. systolic.

A record of pulse rate and blood-pressure is kept

throughout the operation, and the surgeon is warned when the second degree has been entered.

## Theories of Shock.

So far as we have touched in the above upon theory, it has been theory which receives general acceptance and which accords with known clinical facts. No one doubts that the most out-standing clinical feature in shock is lowering of blood-pressure, nor that such lowering is the result of centripetal impulses passing to the central nervous system through the sensory nerves. When we come to discuss the reason why the impulses cause the fall, we are in more debateable country. Again we shall summarise :—

1. Criles' original theory was that the rises of blood-pressure seen in such charts as Fig. 1 were due to reflex vaso-constriction, and the subsequent falls to vaso-dilatation. In complete shock, he supposed that the vaso-motor centre was exhausted and could no longer respond to stimuli. This theory we have been obliged to abandon since we know beyond dispute that in deep shock the arteries are contracted, not dilated.

2. The essential cause of the fall of B.P. which is seen in fully developed shock, is *diminution of the total volume of the circulating blood.* The exact site to which the missing blood volume has withdrawn, is not known. It is not the splanchnic are, as was once supposed. It may be the capillaries of the muscles,

which are themselves in a state of profound relaxation.

3. The normal reaction of the blood is alkaline and it remains alkaline even in deep shock, but what is termed the alkaline reserve is lessened; *i.e.* the blood is further on towards the stage of being acid than it normally is. For a brief period the theory was held that this was if hardly the essential cause of shock, at any rate a phenomenon of profound significance, and the practice of injecting alkalies into the blood stream was advocated We now know that this *acidosis* or diminished alkalinity, is the result of oxygen starvation of the tissues. The arteries being contracted, and the total volume of blood in circulation being diminished, it is obvious that the tissues must be short of oxygen, and Haldane's work enables us to ascribe the altered reaction of the blood to this lack.

4. Early stimulation and later exhaustion of the secretion of the adrenal glands was at one time advanced as an explanation of the blood-pressure curves seen in shock. The theory was ingenious and plausible, but later research has disproved it. The adrenal glands are not exhausted in the deepest shock.

5. Yandell Henderson advanced a theory that shock was due to exhaustion of $CO_2$ from the blood and tissues. He pointed out that in the early stages of operations, excessive depth and frequency was commonly observed in the respiration, and he proved that animals can be killed by pushing artificial re-

spiration to extremes. The theory is referred to again in Chapters III. and IV., but it is not now widely held to account for surgical shock in the ordinary sense, though it may possibly throw light upon certain examples of sudden collapse on the operating table to which the term syncope may more properly be given.

6. The heart muscle is not exhausted in shock. If the volume of circulating blood be restored, as it can be by infusion, the heart will function again perfectly.

7. Certain poisons develop rapidly in crushed and lacerated tissues, absorption of which may give rise to symptoms resembling though not quite identical with those of shock. One such poison is named Histamine. The point is only of importance to anæsthetists from the fact that cases which appear to be very severely shocked as a result of accidents sustained a few hours before the case is seen, and in which limbs have been severely lacerated, may pick up very rapidly after amputation under a good general anæsthetic. Presumably in such cases, the symptoms had arisen as a result of the absorption of toxins, and therefore began to disappear as soon as the damaged tissue was removed. In other words, once the immediate perils of the amputation are past, the outlook may be much better than one would at first sight expect.

8. We should expect that the connecting link between the centripetal nerve impulses which cause

shock and the fall of blood-pressure which is its most striking feature, would be found in the central nervous system. Crile and his co-workers found changes in nerve cells which they believed to be peculiar to the conditions of fear, loss of blood, and surgical shock. Later workers, notably Mott, ascribed the changes solely to anoxæmia, and so discounted the importance of Criles' work. Rendle Short, on the other hand, points out that the changes are not equally distributed in the central nervous system, but that much more marked changes are noticed in nerve cells of those parts of the brain which are believed to govern *muscle tone*. Now loss of muscle tone is a very marked feature of shock, and would of itself cause a fall of blood-pressure, and it is just possible, in Short's opinion, that here at last we may see some definite indication of the essential underlying causes of the phenomena of shock.

Taking the above as a fair summary, the student will realise that much of our knowledge is negative, while another large moiety is speculative. But one fact stands out which brings theory and practice into harmony, and that is that in shock, the circulation is carried on in a partial and imperfect manner, because the volume of the circulating fluid is seriously reduced. If the volume be restored to normal, by infusion either of the blood of another person, or of some neutral fluid such as will not be excreted by the kidneys and skin too rapidly, the heart will respond, and the pressure return to normal. Here we have the key to one of the essential features in the success-

ful treatment of grave degrees of shock. The details of this treatment are more suitably dealt with in a surgical rather than anæsthetic hand-book, but much of the preventive treatment of operative shock lies with the anæsthetist, and we shall therefore say a few words about it.

## Prevention and Treatment of Shock.

There are many theories of shock but only one anti-shock technique which will bear examination. Founding upon his own theory, Crile about 1913 elaborated his ANOCI-ASSOCIATION method, of which the following are the leading features (*see* Fig. 3) :—

(*a*) *Prevention of fear.*—Every member of the team is taught the all-important art of so dealing with the patient that no unnecessary fear is allowed to remain in his mind. That art does not consist in endless repetition of the phrase, "Do not be frightened," but rather in each so bearing himself or herself before the patient that he may gradually acquire the conviction that he is surrounded by careful, kindly, and skilful persons who are doing for him what they do for hundreds of others, and doing it with an expectation of his early and complete recovery so certain that they do not need to put it into words unless definitely questioned. Such an art is not acquired in a day, and some unhappy few are so constituted that they can never acquire it.

As a further preventative of fear, and also for other reasons explained in Chapter VI., the patient

receives a dose of morphia ($\frac{1}{6}$th grain, with $\frac{1}{120}$th grain atropine, hypodermically) three quarters of an hour before operation. Some surgeons go further, and give a sedative the night before operation.

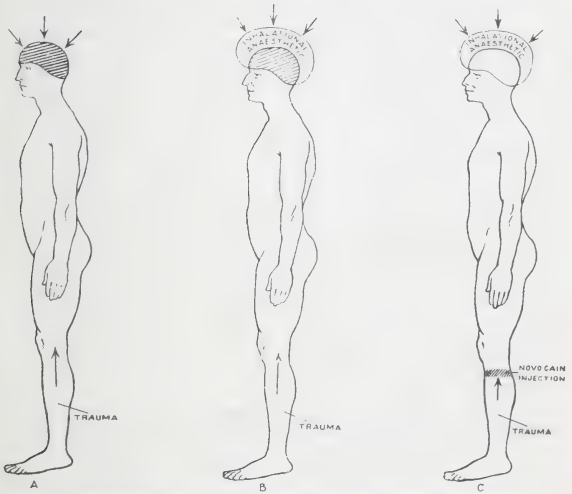



FIG. 3.—Diagram (after CRILE) to illustrate anoci-association. In "A" the trauma is inflicted on the leg, and the brain being wholly unprotected, considerable shock is suffered. In "B" the brain is protected by inhalational anæsthesia from the effects of fear, etc. In "C" the sensory nerves from the seat of trauma are blocked by novocaine, and the brain also protected by inhalational anæsthesia. Theoretically no shock is suffered.

Veronal gr. viii. is the favourite prescription of Prof. Alexis Thomson of Edinburgh.

(*b*) The sensory nerves are "blocked" by infiltration with novocaine. By the systematic use of

local in conjunction with general anæsthesia, the harmful stimuli from the area of operation are prevented from reaching the brain. For the details of this measure, the reader is referred to Chapter XX.

(*c*) The anæsthetic of choice in Crile's practice is nitrous oxide and oxygen (*see* Chapter VIII.).

The whole of this technique has not been generally adopted as a routine, but nevertheless the teachings of Crile have greatly influenced the mind and practice of most surgeons and anæsthetists. Traces of that teaching are to be found everywhere in the organisation built up during the Great War to save as many as possible of the lives of badly smashed men. At no previous time in the history of surgery was the problem of shock so pressing, and a brief resumé of the methods adopted is here set down, as an example of how shock should be dealt with.

## Treatment of Shock among the Casualties of the War.

The first essentials demanded were the most careful organisation, the provision of equipment far in advance of most home civilian hospitals, and of surgical teams specially trained to a high level of excellence. Upon recovery from the field, the injured man received at the ADVANCED DRESSING STATION, such first aid dressing as was necessary, and a dose of *morphia*, sufficient to relieve the worst of the pain. In the opinion of some authorities, harm can be done by pushing morphia too much at this

stage. When the latter had had time to take effect, the case was passed back to the Field Ambulance (where he received his first dose of antetetanic serum), and from there to the CASUALTY CLEARING STATION. During every stage of the journey, he received as much *warm fluid nourishment as possible*. Arrived at the C.C.S., the severe case was passed first into the RESUSCITATION WARD. This department, under the charge of a specially trained M.O., concentrated largely upon two measures—the thorough *warming* of the patient, and the replacing as far as possible of the fluids lost to him by hæmorrhage and shock. The warming in many C.C.S.'s was effected by electric radiant heat baths. The fluids were replaced either by way of infusing blood from another patient, or by the use of *gum saline solution*. Introduced into a vein, the action of this solution persists for a much longer period than that of ordinary saline, being less easily lost by osmosis through the capillaries into the tissues. From the resuscitation ward, the patient passed to the OPERATING THEATRE. Though the full technique of anoci-association was not always possible, the maxims which Crile had sought to inculcate into the practice of surgery influenced the work of surgeons and anæsthetists very profoundly. Nitrous oxide and oxygen was used for all the severely shocked cases, and infiltration with local anæsthetics where feasible and necessary.

## CHAPTER III.

# ASPHYXIA (ANOXÆMIA) and other Changes in the Blood Gases.

### PHYSIOLOGY OF THE RESPIRATORY CENTRE.

The student is no doubt conversant with the physiology of respiration, but he is here reminded of certain facts in connection with the control of the respiratory centre, a due appreciation of which is vital to intelligent anæsthetisation of the human subject.

To a limited extent, the respiratory centre is controlled by *nervous* influences. Firstly, there is the Hering-Breuer reflex which does not appear to be of importance in anæsthesia. Secondly, there is the *voluntary* control, which of course functions only up to the point when consciousness is abolished by the drug. Thirdly, there is always the possibility of some *nerve reflex* affecting the centre. A plunge into a cold bath for instance produces tremendous stimulation of the centre by centripetal stimuli of the skin nerves. Similarly, even under anæsthesia, stimulation of sensory nerves may produce the most marked changes in respiration, which the student must be able to ascribe to their true cause if he wishes to be something more than a handicraftsman.

Far more important than the nervous control, is that

exercised by the *blood gases*. The centre is exquisitely sensitive to the slightest change in the amount of $CO_2$ in the blood and alveolar air. A trifling increase will lead to increased ventilation of the lung, the increase being mostly in the *depth* not the *rate*. Similarly, quite a small fall of the $CO_2$ content of the alveolar air will lead to decreased depth of respiration or even to a temporary cessation (apnœa).

Alterations of the other essential blood gas, namely Oxygen, also lead to changes in lung ventilation. *Oxygen starvation* stimulates the centre to increased action, but the increase is in the *rate* more than in the *depth* of respiration which becomes rapid, shallow and later jerky and intermittent. In the absence of oxygen, the centre cannot long survive; a few gasps are noted, and then total cessation of all further effort.

In actual practice, lack of oxygen is usually combined with $CO_2$ excess, though under the artificial conditions of certain forms of anæsthesia later to be mentioned, the former is present without the latter. It will suffice for our present purpose if we state that $CO_2$ excess may possibly protect the subject for a brief period from the results of insufficient supply of oxygen, but that the protection is of limited utility only, and cannot be relied on as any real safeguard. Possibly it may even be a drawback, as the continuance of action of the centre as a result of stimulation by $CO_2$ excess may mislead the inexperienced, and mask the fact that the patient is really short of oxygen, until a calamity makes apparent the true state of affairs.

To understand the difference between the deep urgent breathing caused by $CO_2$ excess and the quick shallow breathing of oxygen want, is very important in any form of anæsthesia: in administrations of Nitrous Oxide and Oxygen, it is absolutely essential.

## Asphyxia or Anoxæmia.

This is by far the commonest blood gas change met with in anæsthetic work. As usually seen both $CO_2$ excess and oxygen want, are present. The actions of these two factors have been differentiated by various workers, and it has been definitely proved that the stimulation of the respiratory centre seen in the early stage of the condition is due to the $CO_2$ excess, but that the remaining and more fatal symptoms are referrable to lack of oxygen. The term anoxæmia gives therefore the most accurate description of the condition.

It arises during anæsthesia from several causes. In the first place, the drug which the patient is inhaling and absorbing into the blood, turns out from his red corpuscles a corresponding quantity of oxygen. While this is only seen in its extreme form in the case of nitrous oxide gas, it is a factor acting even in the case of other anæsthetics Secondly, during deep anæsthesia, the respiratory centre may be somewhat depressed, and the force and frequency of the respiratory act diminished. Thirdly, the respiratory passages may be partially or wholly occluded from *mechanical* causes. This is far the most important type

of asphyxia, being the most common, the most fatal, and the most easily prevented.

## Common Causes of Mechanical Asphyxia.

(1) Clenching of the Jaws arises not uncommonly during anæsthesia, being specially frequent towards the end of the induction period. Since a very large proportion of individuals have nasal passages insufficient in bore to carry the full volume of respired air, respiration must be obstructed if the jaws are clenched.

(2) Falling Back of the Lower Jaw and Base of the Tongue over the Epiglottis.—This is always liable to happen after the muscles are deeply relaxed. Turgescence of the mucous membrane of this region may itself be the origin of an obstruction, and as explained later, will almost certainly occur as part of the vicious circle set up by an obstruction anywhere else in the respiratory tract.

(3) Mucus or Blood or a Foreign Body Drawn by Inspiration into the Air Passages.—Changes of position of the head may release mucus which has been gathering in some parts of the mouth or pharynx. For instance, if the head has been lying on the side for some time, a pool commonly gathers in the most dependent cheek, and unless this is mopped out before the head is brought into the mesial position, this pool will be suddenly tipped backwards, and very probably drawn into the larynx. Again, in operations upon the nasal or oral cavities, blood is always liable to be inspired, and not a

few teeth have found their way into the air passages in the practices of dental surgeons who do not take precautions against this accident.

(4) Spasm of the Adductors of the Vocal Cords is one of the most common and most baffling incidents in anæsthesia. It announces its presence by the commencement of *laryngeal stridor*, a high-pitched crowing noise, which is as annoying for the surgeon and anæsthetist to hear as the stridor itself is detrimental to the progress of a smooth anæsthesia. Inspired mucus or blood almost invariably sets it up, and the two conditions of fluid in the larynx and narrowing of the glottis from approximation of the cords, add their effects together, with resulting obstruction of a high degree.

Laryngeal stridor, however, frequently occurs even when no fluid has been inspirated. It may be set up as a reflex from the area of operation. Dilatation of the sphincter ani, and removal of the prepuce in circumcision are two common examples. It may also undoubtedly be caused by giving too strong a vapour during the latter part of the induction stage. Lastly, stridor may occur from no obvious cause at all, or to speak more correctly, from causes which are at present not known to us. It is the author's belief that one of these causes may prove to be *morphia* given as a preliminary to inhalational anæsthesia. In his experience, stridor has been more frequent with morphia than without, particularly if chloroform be the anæsthetic chosen. Beyond that he cannot at present go.

(5) Pressure upon the Air passages of Neo-

PLASTIC OR INFLAMMATORY SWELLINGS IN THE NECK.—In such cases any obstruction which may exist before induction will probably become intensified during the process, and a complete arrest of respiration is not uncommon. Large goitres are the most common type of neoplasm to give trouble, and all acute inflammatory conditions in the neck which extend towards the trachea are notorious for their tendency to give cause for anxiety during anæsthesia.

## The Physiology of Anoxæmia.

An animal, subjected to asphyxia, either mechanically or otherwise, shows the following signs :—

(*a*) *Increase of the depth and frequency of the respiratory movements of chest and abdomen.* Even though there be a complete mechanical obstruction, increased efforts to breathe may still be made for some moments, although air no longer passes in and out of the chest. In the deeply anæsthetised subject, this phenomenon may be very ill marked, or altogether absent. At the best, the respiratory centre under chloroform or ether soon tires if the air-way is obstructed, and ceases to respond to the stimulus of the gathering $CO_2$. Some work by Cushny in 1914 brought out clearly that in deep anæsthesia, the centre hardly responded at all to increased $CO_2$, and his results were confirmed recently by Trevan and Brook.

(*b*) There is usually a considerable rise of blood-

pressure owing to a high degree of vaso-constriction. Levi, when working on the subject, failed to obtain any considerable rise of blood-pressure; other workers, however, have seen it.

(*c*) The pupils dilate.

(*d*) Generalised convulsions.

(*e*) The animal succumbs finally from cardiac failure. No heart muscle can continue to function properly if supplied by the coronary arteries with venous blood. Moreover, the heart pump may have to act against the greatly increased peripheral resistance induced by vaso-constriction. It must therefore be a matter of time only when the strongest and healthiest heart will cease to contract under the abnormal conditions of anoxæmia.

## Clinical Signs of Mechanical Anoxæmia in the Anæsthetised Subject.

The classical signs of asphyxia above described are hardly to be expected in the operating theatre, but essentially the condition of the patient who develops respiratory obstruction while under an anæsthetic is similar to that produced experimentally in animals in the laboratory. The changes most easily observed are as follows:—

(1) *Alteration of the colour.*—Cyanosis shows itself earliest in the lips, and the lobules of the ears,—later the whole face becomes dusky.

(2) *Dilatation of the pupil,* which ceases to respond to the stimulus of light.

(3) *The respiratory movements increase in depth and frequency.*—The chest and abdominal walls may heave forcibly; but

(4) *The volume of air passing in and out of the glottis is diminished.*—In complete obstruction, of course, none passes at all. Persistence of chest movements is no proof of the passage of air in and out of the chest: that can only be proved by hearing the movement of air through glottis and mouth or nose, or feeling it on the delicate skin of the back of the observer's hand.

Similarly, absence of chest movements is no proof that an asphyxia is not mechanical in origin. In the unanæsthetised subject, the respiratory centre always responds to the stimulus of $CO_2$ excess before finally succumbing, but when deeply affected by an anæsthetic, it may, as already explained, do so for a very brief period only. It therefore often happens that the stage of heaving chest referred to in (3) is ill marked and may not be observed at all.

(5) *True convulsions are not seen*, unless we may consider the jactitation of deep $N_2O$ anæsthesia as such (see Chapter VII.). Nevertheless, there are obvious and most valuable signs of asphyxia to be found in the muscular system, often quite early. These consist in the incidence of *muscular rigidity*, which is frequently observed first in the muscles of the abdominal wall. A surgeon performing laparatomy will notice at once the occurrence of this phenomenon, than which hardly anything can com-

plicate and delay his task more effectively. The anæsthetist who knows his work will, upon hearing from the surgeon a complaint as to the rigidity of the abdominal wall, devote his attention first to securing a perfectly free air-way before deciding that a deeper anæsthesia is required.

## The Clinical Signs of Non-obstructive Anoxæmia.

Want of oxygen may develop in the patient apart from mechanical obstruction. Most typically it is seen in nitrous oxide administered to a deep level of anæsthesia, without admixture with oxygen. If given continuously upon a valved principle whereby the patient's own $CO_2$ is not conserved to him, we see a purer type of anoxæmia than in obstructive asphyxia, in that marked increase of blood and alveolar $CO_2$ is not present. Pushed to overdosage, nitrous oxide causes the typical rapid respiration of oxygen want, ending suddenly in a few gasps and then total cessation.

It must be remembered that oxygen want in itself is capable of producing loss of consciousness. Moreover, a period of sub-fatal anoxæmia is liable to be followed by a period during which the mental state is abnormal, and people recovering from anoxæmia are often amusingly irrational in their outlook. Haldane quotes the case of a mine inspector who returned to the surface after exposure to a slight degree of anoxæmia in a mine after a fire. He first of all shook hands very cordially with all

the bystanders, and then offered to fight a doctor who kindly offered him the support of his arm. The author has seen similar incidents in the dentists' consulting rooms.

Apart from obstruction and the inhalation of nitrous oxide, Haldane's work on anoxæmia brings home to us that want of oxygen in the tissues, particularly in the nerve centres, is the explanation of the symptoms seen in many conditions not hitherto much associated in our minds with changes in the blood gases. For instance, patients in whom the circulation is failing, frequently show quick, shallow respirations, which later become jerky and intermittent; even definite Cheyne-Stokes respiration may develop. These changes are anoxæmic in origin; there is enough oxygen in the alveolar air, but the defective circulation cannot perform its due function of carrying it to the respiratory centre. For the relief of such symptoms, the provision by the anæsthetist of an excess of oxygen in the inspired air can do something which will effect at any rate temporary improvement. Conversely, to make such a patient breathe an atmosphere deficient in oxygen is greatly to reduce any chance he might otherwise have of ulitmate recovery.

## Prevention and Treatment of Asphyxia.

Once asphyxia, especially mechanical asphyxia, has begun, it almost invariably tends to get worse. The engorgement affects among other venules, those which run under the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract,

still further obstructing the passage of air. The muscular rigidity, moreover, soon manifests itself in the adductors of the vocal cords and the muscles which close the jaws: the patient has thus entered into a "vicious circle" (Fig 4). It is evident that the prevention of the earliest signs

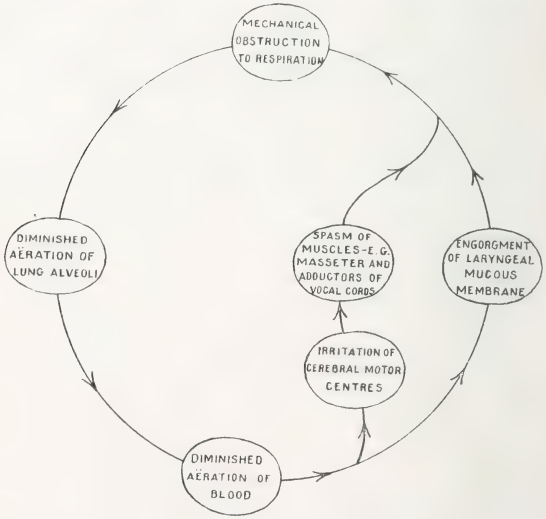



FIG. 4.—Vicious circle of asphyxia.

of asphyxia is to the anæsthetist a matter of vital interest. The cardinal points to watch are as follows:—

(1) Keep the neck of the patient as far as possible in a natural position, *i.e.* do not either flex or extend the head unduly upon the body unless the nature of the operation demands such an unusual position.

(2) Maintain a free passage for air either through the nose or the mouth.

(3) Keep the lower jaw in good position throughout the administration.

(4) Avoid turning the face from the lateral to the dorsal (face up) position unless essential. If it has to be done, be careful first to mop out any "pool" from the dependent cheek.

(5) Deal as effectively as possible with the earliest appearance of laryngeal stridor.

Let us see how in a normal case, these rules can be applied. With the patient lying (or, in exceptional circumstances, sitting) in a comfortable position, the shoulders and head raised above the rest of the body and the face looking upwards (or straight forwards, in the case of the sitting patient), the anæsthetic is begun slowly, and the patient encouraged to take his time and to breathe naturally. At this stage the jaw needs no support, the muscles being neither relaxed by deep anæsthesia, nor spastic from asphyxia. With the advent of muscular relaxation, the head is turned to one side, that which is opposite to the side on which the surgeon will be working, being usually chosen. We must now determine whether the patient can breathe best through the mouth or the nose, and make sure that the channel chosen is as free as possible. In the majority of cases it will be found that respiration is oral, and that all that is necessary is to support the lower jaw by a finger hooked into the depression just below the symphysis mentis. The hands of the anæsthetist, therefore, take up a position from which

in nine cases out of ten they will never require to be moved.

*The hand of the side toward which the patient's face is turned* supports the jaw and keeps the face-piece or mask adapted to the face. The middle finger is pressed into the space below the symphysis mentis, and *exercises traction forwards and a little upwards,* thus preventing the

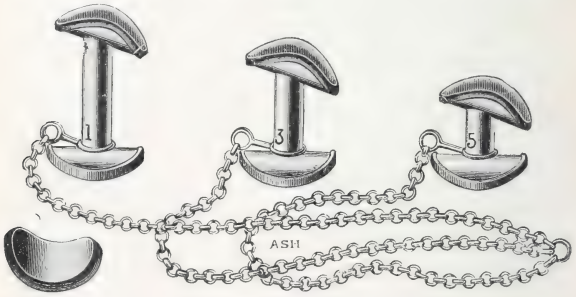



FIG. 5.—Hewitt's dental props.

jaw from slipping backwards ; the index finger lies along the lower part of the mask, maintaining adaptation between it and the chin ; the thumb bears on the mask higher up, keeping its upper part pressed against the bridge of the patient's nose, and also serving as a *point d'appui,* or fulcrum, from which the jaw traction by the middle finger can conveniently be exercised. This grip once learnt is not fatiguing to the hand, and is in the author's opinion one of the essential points for the beginner to master (*see* Fig. 34C, page 129).

*The opposite hand* holds the drop bottle, if the method

in use is an open one, the wrist resting upon the uppermost side of the patient's head.

Fig. 34C shows this grip in operation, while Fig. 34D shows the alternative frequently adopted. This alternative has various disadvantages. It covers up a larger part of the patient's face than the method recommended, and it tends to tilt the mask sideways. The little finger is supposed to be hooking forward the jaw by pressing behind its angle, and such a method is very fatiguing if in use for more than a few moments.

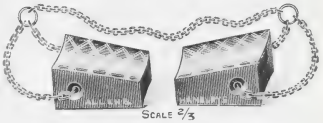


FIG. 6.—Bellamy Gardner's dental props.

In a proportion of cases, it is found that a free airway cannot be maintained by these simple measures. Upper or lower teeth (or both) may be missing and traction upon the lower jaw only closes the mouth the more firmly. In most of these cases, the difficulty can be met by the use of the *dental prop*. These are made in various sizes and shapes, of which the best known are Hewitt's and Bellamy Gardner's (*see* Figs. 5 and 6). The latter are made of aluminium and are of small size only. They are the most convenient for cases with teeth both in the upper and lower jaw but who suffer from a receding lower jaw

FIG. 7.—Phillip's modification of Hewitt's artificial air-way.

not easily kept forward unless the prop is used as a rocker, as it were, upon which it can be slid forward. Hewitt's props are of plated metal, with lead on the cups, to avoid injury to the teeth. They are made in five sizes, of which the middle and larger are very convenient for cases in which one or both rows of teeth are missing.

For cases entirely without teeth, and in which a large flabby tongue is prone to fall back over the epiglottis, the mouth tube (Fig. 7) is very convenient. The rubber shank lies along the top of the tongue, the metal end lies

Fig. 8.—Silk's nasal tube.

between the gums. As originally introduced by Hewitt, the air-way was circular in cross section, but the flattened model figured in a distinct improvement. It was introduced by Dr Phillips.

Occasionally one decides to facilitate nasal rather than oral breathing, and if the natural passages are inadequate, recourse may be had to the nasal airway introduced by Dr J. F. W. Silk. This is a straight rubber tube of fairly firm texture (*see* Fig. 8), some seven-sixteenths of an inch in diameter, and about seven inches in length. Naturally, the larger the calibre of the tube

which can be passed, the more free will be the resulting air-way. First lubricated with vaseline, the tube is passed along one nostril until its bevelled end passes out from the posterior nares and comes to rest just behind the base of

FIG. 9A.—Bellamy Gardner's tongue-clip.

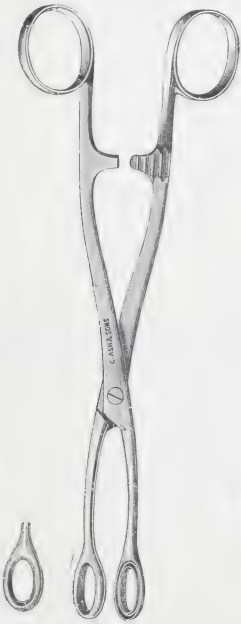



FIG. 9B. Ring tongue forceps.

FIG. 9C. Glossotilt.

the tongue, and just above the glottis The exact depth so which the tube should be passed in the individual case thould be ascertained by testing the ease with which air

is passing up and down, and a safety-pin may be passed so as to mark the optimum position and prevent the tube slipping inwards.

If proper and timely use be made of one or other of these simple devices, the use of the tongue forceps is rarely necessary. Occasionally, however, it may be required, and a suitable appliance should always be at hand for an emergency. Fig. 9 shows two types. The little clip of Mr Bellamy Gardner is preferable to the ring type, the passage of the spike through the tongue substance producing less after-pain than the bruising following the use of the other instrument. The third drawing in Fig. 9 is of an instrument not much known outside Edinburgh; it is called a glossotilt, and is intended to lever forward the base of the tongue, as an alternative to nipping the tip of the organ with forceps, and has, in the opinion of some, various advantages.

Before using either mouth prop or tongue forceps, it is occasionally necessary to use some mechanical means to lever open a tightly clenched jaw. The earlier one interferes in a case of mechanical asphyxia, the less necessity will exist for the use of such means. Fig. 10 shows two well-known mouth gags, and also a boxwood wedge, the use of which is less liable to injure teeth than a metal instrument. If a gag is used, the blades when closed should lie the one behind the other, not side by side. This ensures a minimal thickness to be inserted between the tightly clenched teeth.

## Treatment of Laryngeal Stridor.

This is of necessity difficult since the causation of the condition is in many cases obscure. *The error* common to most beginners, and to many who would resent such a title being applied to them, is to regard the appearance of stridor as an indiction to *deepen the anæsthesia.* Whether the cause lie in local irritation of the laryngeal mucous membrane or in some stimulus from the area of operation, the condition is presumably always essentially a reflex spasm of the adductors of the vocal cords, but it is a *reflex which may persist even in an anæsthesia so deep that the vital medullary centres are in peril.*

The preventive treatment consists chiefly in following

FIG. 10A.—Boxwood wedge for opening jaws.

the other rules set forth above for the prevention of asphyxia with such faithful care, that the patient never enters into the vicious circle of asphyxia of which stridor is so prominent a feature. Patience in the induction stage—the avoidance of *forcing* the anæsthetic upon the patient—is a safeguard not to be forgotten.

Once the condition has arisen, it saves time to *withdraw the anæsthetic* altogether, and to allow the patient to breathe nothing but fresh air. Brisk friction of the lips with a rough towel often does good, presumably by setting up a "cross reflex." In severe cases, a most valuable

measure is the inhalation of pure oxygen, a cylinder of which should always be at hand in the operating theatre. Even an obstructed air-way will convey enough undiluted

FIG. 10B.—Wedge for opening jaws.

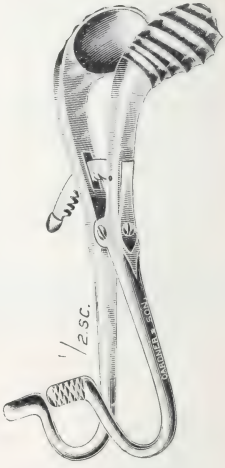



FIG. 10C.—Mouth gag.

oxygen to reduce the venosity of the blood, and so cut across the vicious circle.

## Other Alterations in the Blood Gases.

Up to the present we have discussed alterations in the blood gases chiefly from the point of view of oxygen

want. Something however remains to be said from the point of view of the anæsthetist, upon the subject of $CO_2$ want and excess.

Apart from its action as the normal regulator of the respiratory centre, a certain proportion of $CO_2$ is necessary in the economy. Starling and his assistants have shown that in the presence of real $CO_2$ want, the circulation cannot be effectively carried on, and Henderson in his "acapnic" theory of shock advanced at one time the suggestion that collapse on the operating table was commonly due to the excessive respiration sometimes seen under ether not very well given. Certain facts to which Henderson pointed in support of his theory are not in doubt; briefly they are as follows:—

1. Experimentally, if one practices excessive respiration (*hyperpnoea*) for as long as nature permits, the $CO_2$ in the blood and alveoli is so reduced that further respiration is impossible and a period of *apnoea* ensues which persists until a sufficiency of $CO_2$ has again gathered. A resolute experimenter can push the period of hyperpnoea to such lengths that he feels very faint and giddy and shows definite cyanosis before the apnoea terminates; in other words he is short of oxygen before he has gathered in his alveoli enough $CO_2$ to enable his respiratory centre to work.

2. In the laboratory the above experiment has been pushed to its logical conclusion, and animals have been killed by the simple process of administering to them artificial respiration to excess.

Doubtless, hyperpnoea does sometimes occur under anæsthesia, and if the method in use be an "open" one, temporary lowering of the $CO_2$ in the blood and alveoli must result, but several observations lead us now to suppose that in such cases, nature applies her remedy of apnoea (or in less extreme instances, a period of reduced lung ventilation) in time to prevent serious consequences. Blood analysis has demonstrated that even after long administrations, the patient's blood always contains a sufficiency of $CO_2$. Moreover, the air under open ether masks—and it is precisely this method of anæsthetising which Henderson believed prone to cause acapnia—has been analysed, and shown to contain so high a proportion of $CO_2$ as to preclude the possibility of the patient developing $CO_2$ starvation. In one method only of anæsthetising does the author believe that anything corresponding with Henderson's acapnia ever occurs in anæsthesia. This point will be dealt with in the succeeding Chapter.

Lastly, $CO_2$ *excess* may be present without oxygen want. In the re-breathing method mentioned in the next Chapter, the contents of the bag may be kept as rich in oxygen as desired, if a cylinder of the gas is available. It therefore behoves us to remember that with such a system, we must still guard against real excess of $CO_2$ consequent upon repeated respiration of the same atmosphere. Our guide will be the *depth* of respiration. If we continue with re-breathing to a point when the type of respiration corresponds with that which would indicate real distress in the unanæsthetised subject (a point which is reached

when the inspired air contains some 6 per cent. of $CO_2$), we are doing harm instead of good. We may excite the vomiting centre and damage the circulation at the moment ; and if recovery takes place we may find that we have given the patient a very severe headache.

CHAPTER IV.

## METHODS OF ANÆSTHETISING.

CERTAIN terms such as "open method," "closed method," etc., are used in describing different systems of anæsthetising, and it will save time later if these are now defined and a few words added to indicate their bearing upon the questions dealt with in the foregoing Chapter.

The OPEN METHOD is one in which the drug is dropped or poured upon a fabric stretched on a mask which does not lie in close apposition to the face. If the student will experiment with such a mask as Schimmelbusch's, he will find that by no effort can he make its whole circumference touch his face at the same time. Anæsthetics vapourised from such masks must of necessity be inhaled freely diluted with fresh air. These masks are only suitable for use with chloroform.

The PERHALATION METHOD.—This term is not used often, but it is the most strictly correct name to give to the process commonly called "open ether." If the student will examine Bellamy Gardner's open ether mask (Fig. 33) he will find that it is deliberately shaped to lie over its entire circumference in close apposition to the face of the average patient. In actual use it is well, however, to make sure of this apposition by the use of a

ring of gauze as shown in Fig. 34A. Upon the mask is stretched gauze of a thickness just as great as will permit free respiration to take place through its layers. The whole bulk of the respired air must pass *through the fabric*, none escaping between the face and mask.

The term "SEMI-OPEN" is applied to various methods now rarely seen. One of the best known of these was the anæsthetic cone, still used by a few for C.E. mixture.

Granted a free air-way in the patient himself, there is in none of the foregoing methods anything which should seriously upset the balance of the blood gases. The oxygen of the atmosphere is freely available, and the conditions are such that excessive loss of $CO_2$ sufficient to cause acapnic collapse is not in question.

The term "CLOSED METHOD" is applied to one in which the patient breathes in and out of a closed bag. The Clover and Ormsby inhalers are "closed" instruments. With this method the patient rapidly uses up the oxygen of the contained air, and accumulates considerable $CO_2$; life could not be sustained for any long period of time under such a system. Oxygen must be supplied from time to time by permitting say one breath in five to be taken from the fresh air instead of from that in the bag. Alternatively, oxygen from a cylinder may be supplied by an accessory pipe into the inhaler.

This method is also referred to as the RE-BREATHING METHOD. Hyperpnoea with this method does *not* lower the $CO_2$ in the alveoli and is therefore *not* followed by apnoea.

The VALVED METHOD is used only with "gas" or

"gas-oxygen." The facepiece fitting accurately, the patient draws all the volume of his inspiration from the inhaler: his expirations he propels through a valve, into the general atmosphere of the room. If nitrous oxide unmixed with oxygen is being given, the patient suffers from oxygen starvation even more rapidly and completely than in the re-breathing method. During the induction period of gas anæsthesia, such oxygen starvation is practised deliberately, and if not pushed too far is harmless. It cannot, however, be continued for more than a brief space of time. The admixture of oxygen to the vapour being breathed entirely abolishes this unfavourable feature.

There is, however, another consequence of the use of "valves" which is unaffected by the addition of oxygen. Reference has already been made to *Yandell Henderson's acapnic theory*, and if under any form of anæsthesia the patient can be reduced to a condition of *$CO_2$ starvation*, it will be when the valved system of administration is in operation for a prolonged period. As a matter of experience, patients breathing "on the valves" do often exhibit shallow respirations and slight pallor, which is rapidly and very strikingly remedied by turning to the re-breathing method. One can hardly doubt that the improvement is due to a gradual re-accumulation of carbon di-oxide in the blood and tissues.

The discovery of Bohr that lack of $CO_2$ *causes the hæmoglobin of the blood to hold on more tightly to its oxygen*, throws much light upon this question. From this work, it is evident that if $CO_2$ is reduced by excessive and

prolonged valvular breathing, even a patient with a good colour may, so far as his nerve tissue is concerned, be really suffering from oxygen starvation, since the hæmoglobin refuses to give up its charge of oxygen. Since becoming acquainted with Bohr's results, the author's preference for a method of gas-oxygen administration, which admits of some degree of re-breathing, has been greatly strengthened.

Two other terms referring not to the type of inhaler but to the method of supplying the drug, are in use.

By the "DROP" METHOD, we mean one in which the anæsthetic is supplied in a steady series of drops. The flow may be quick or slow, but it always arrives on the mask in isolated drops of uniform size. Such a method demands more constant attention than the next to be described, but it is capable of yielding that even uniformity of vapour strength so desirable in open methods.

The DOUCHE METHOD is unfortunately far more commonly used by those whose attention has never been drawn to the significance of the difference between the two. Supplies of the drug rendered, say, every twenty seconds cannot possibly give an even vapour strength.

"SINGLE DOSE" methods are of use chiefly in dental surgery. The patient is charged up with the anæsthetic, and the operator has to begin his work as soon as the mask is withdrawn from the face, ceasing as soon as the patient shows any signs of recovering consciousness of pain.

Single doses anæsthetics are in a class by themselves. In order to achieve success with them, special experience

on the part of the administrator and mutual confidence between operator and anæsthetist are essential.

The period of anæsthesia available to the operator which any particular "single dose" anæsthetic may be expected to yield is obviously a matter of the first importance, and the table given in Chapter XX. will be found helpful in this connection.

CHAPTER V.

# THE CLINICAL OBSERVATION OF THE PATIENT.

## Stages of Anæsthesia.

Anæsthesia has been divided into four clinical stages corresponding to the degrees to which the nervous system has been affected. The boundaries between these stages are often ill-defined, but the terminology has some value as facilitating description.

The First Stage lasts from the commencement of inhalation up to the time when volitional self-control is lost by the patient.

The Second Stage in the older text-books was said to be characterised by struggling, shouting, and breath-holding. With a patient not addicted to alcohol and with the anæsthetic skilfully administered, this description is unduly lurid.

The Third Stage is that of full surgical anæsthesia.

The Fourth Stage is that of over-dosage.

## The Ocular Reflexes in Anæsthesia.

These give such valuable assistance to the anæsthetist that it will be well to define and describe them as a preliminary. They are three in number.

The Conjunctival Reflex is best elicited by drawing the upper lid upwards from the eyeball and retaining it in that position with one finger, while with another finger the ocular conjunctiva is lightly touched in the area of the inner canthus. If the anæsthesia is very light, both lids attempt to approximate and close the palpebral fissure. The upper lid may slip down from under the retaining finger and come into its proper place, while the lower lid is elevated. At a deeper level of anæsthesia there is not complete action of the orbicularis but merely of a certain part of it, so that all that is observed is a *twitch inwards of the lower lid*. Even this form of the reflex disappears before the corneal reflex.

The Corneal Reflex is elicited by pushing up the upper lid by one finger and with the pulp of the *same* finger lightly touching the centre of the cornea as soon as it is exposed, when we feel or see the upper lid come back into position with a sharp definite twitch. The examining finger must be slipped smartly out of the way as soon as the cornea has been touched. Even in deep anæsthesia, a trace of this reflex can usually be elicited if the little manipulation be properly performed.

The conjunctival and corneal reflexes are frequently confused in the mind of the student. The most common mistake made is to pin the upper lid firmly somewhere in the region of the bony roof of the orbit, to dab the eye far too vigorously, and to believe that no reflex is present because no movement of the upper lid takes place. In the first place, the upper lid cannot move if it is rigidly held against a bony plate : in the second place, it is wholly

unnecessary to inflict upon the cornea more than the lightest of touches. Both these reflexes are to be used with great discretion, undue frequency and excessive vigour of touch being alike capable of setting up serious inflammatory reaction.

The Pupillary Light Reflex is elicited by shutting off light from *both* pupils for ten to twenty seconds and then smartly withdrawing the protecting fingers and allowing as strong a light as possible to fall on to the eye. The response of the sphincter pupillæ should *always* be present; its absence is a certain indication of something wrong: some sluggishness may be permissible under ether, but even that is suggestive of trouble if chloroform is the anæsthetic.

The use of a preliminary hypodermic of morphia tends to make the pupil somewhat smaller than normal, and to elicit the light reflex it may be necessary to cut off illumination for a somewhat longer period than if no morphia had been given. Nevertheless with a little care, the light reflex should always be capable of demonstration even in the morphinised subject.

## The Observation of a Normal Case.

In the case of nitrous oxide and of ethyl chloride, the patient passes through the various stages very rapidly, and the picture of anæsthesia as induced by either of these two is therefore best described separately. The following may be taken, therefore, as an account of what is to be observed in the patient inhaling ether or chloroform,

unless a specific reference is made to one of the other anæsthetics.

First Stage.—The first sign that some effect is being produced in the patient is usually the appearance of the movements of *swallowing;* the hyoid and thyroid can be felt or seen to be moving in conjunction with the muscles of deglutition. During this stage, the patient being still to some extent under volitional control, there should be no other movement noticed. The eyes are usually closed and the colour normal; the respiration may be hurried by excitement, but judicious handling of the patient will do much to minimise this.

The Second Stage is really entered when volitional control is lost. It may be characterised by struggling and shouting by the patient, even if the anæsthetic is properly administered; but with a healthy patient and a good anæsthetist, all that usually occurs in the way of movement by the patient is some rigidity of the limbs and a slight attempt, perhaps, to lift the head from the pillow or a limb from the couch. The breathing tends during the first part of this stage to be light and is rarely entirely regular: slight pauses occur, usually after an inspiration, less commonly after expiration. Serious "holding of the breath" (after an inspiration) rarely occurs save in the type of patient who is also struggling; if it does occur to a degree which causes any blueness of the patient's face (cyanosis), it usually calls for the removal of the anæsthetic for a moment until normal breathing has been resumed.

The colour of the face rarely departs much from normal

during the second stage, unless cyanosis from breath-holding intervenes.

The eyes are usually opened as the second stage progresses, and the eyeballs tend to rotate slowly in every plane. The pupils are usually large, but react sharply to light. Both conjunctival and corneal reflexes are brisk.

The Onset of the Third Stage is marked by the appearance of muscular relaxation. Any limb which the patient may have been holding rigidly up, sinks down on to the couch, and it will be found that if an attempt be now made by the anæsthetist (as it should be) to turn the head of the patient to one or other side, the muscles of the neck no longer resist.

*The respiration* also alters in type, losing its tendency to lightness and irregularity, and becomes full, deep, and regular. In open ether anæsthesia particularly, expiration commonly assumes a "blowing" type very characteristic, and which to the trained ear is of itself an indication that full surgical anæsthesia is present, or at any rate not far distant.

*The colour* varies somewhat with the anæsthetic in use. With ether it is usually somewhat higher than normal, and a trace of blueness may be present if the method is the "closed" one. Anything more than a trace, however, must be regarded as abnormal, whatever the method or anæsthetic may be. With chloroform the colour is perhaps a little paler than that normal to the individual.

*The eyelids* are usually almost closed, and the eyeballs at rest looking forward and slightly downwards. An ex-

treme rotation downward may usually be taken as a sign of very deep anæsthesia. *The pupil* is, as already said, always active to light, but its actual size varies with the anæsthetic used. With ether, particularly "closed" ether, it may be large (4-5 millimetres): with open ether, preceded by morphia, about 3-4 millimetres: a good chloroform anæsthesia usually exhibits a pupil of only 2-3 millimetres, and if morphia has also been given, it may be pin-point in size. Too much emphasis must not be placed, however, upon the mere size of the pupil; that may vary within wide limits without necessarily indicating serious abnormality. The essential point is that the light reflex shall be brisk. A pupil of 5 millimetres reacting sharply to light may be of no special moment: one of that size immobile to light would cause real anxiety.

*The conjunctival reflex* usually disappears fairly early in the third stage: if briskly present, the anæsthesia is certainly a light one, and probably insufficient for an abdominal section. *The corneal reflex* if properly taken in the way already described can usually be elicited throughout the third stage. In an anæsthesia deep enough for abdominal section it is, of course, not brisk, but we may say generally that its entire absence is *presumptive* evidence of a very deep anæsthesia—probably undesirably deep. It must not be forgotten that some local causes such as drying of the surface of the cornea may cause it to disappear, and in case of doubt it is sometimes worth while to wash out the eye with a little saline solution. If after doing so the anæsthetist still finds the reflex not present he should be on his guard. Provided,

however, that the light reflex is still present and colour and respiration satisfactory, he need not consider that the patient is in any immediate danger.

Broadly speaking, then, the third stage, the stage which is called for by the requirements of major surgery, is characterised by (1) full regular respirations ; (2) colour not much removed from normal ; (3) moderate sized pupil, larger in the case of ether than chloroform ; (4) conjunctival reflex faint or absent ; (5) corneal reflex just present, or, in a deep third stage, just absent ; (6) light reflex present : these may be regarded *as the signs of fully developed surgical anæsthesia.*

The absolute beginner may be so completely out of his reckoning as to mistake the quietude of the later part of the first stage for the appearance of the third stage. For the prevention of so gross an error as that, the reader need only be referred to a patient study of the foregoing. But even a man with considerable experience may frequently be in doubt exactly as to *how far through the third stage his patient has passed.* He may have attained a level which will permit an incision to be made into the skin without movement on the part of the patient, but not one which would relax the abdominal muscles sufficiently for the peritoneum to be opened without eliciting considerable resistance from the abdominal muscles. In such moments of doubt, the author is accustomed to request the surgeon to make his skin incision, and *observe the effect which this trauma has upon the depth, frequency, and regularity of respiration.* This furnishes a most valuable guide to the depth of anæsthesia. In a third

stage of very light degree, the respiratory rhythm will be interrupted and the breath held for a second in inspiration. Apart from any other sign, that may be taken as an index that the anæsthesia is very light—too light to permit of opening the peritoneal cavity. In a very deep anæsthesia the respiration is little affected by the skin incision, while at a moderate and more desirable level the respiration is quickened and deepened, but unaffected in the regularity of its rhythm.

The Fourth Stage or Stage of Overdose. — This stage is, of course, never entered voluntarily. Its earliest signs are loss of all tone in the muscles of expression, complete loss of corneal reflex, a widely dilated pupil *insensitive to light*, and a type of respiration which though definitely weakened may show occasional deep gasps. Circulatory failure and cessation of respiration from failure of the medullary centre are the closing phenomena of overdose.

## The Circulation in Anæsthesia.

It will be perhaps noticed that in the foregoing, no reference has been made to the examination of the pulse. This is not an oversight on the part of the author. It is perfectly true that under any anæsthetic not complicated by an asphyxial element, the blood-pressure falls as the drug takes effect, and that in the case of chloroform the fall is often quite considerable. Such a fall can be appreciated by the skilled finger, but only by concentrating upon that examination a degree of atten-

tion which necessarily detracts from the administrator's available energy for the observation of other signs which are of equal value, and can be more rapidly and certainly appreciated and appraised.

It is nevertheless essential to assure oneself during the whole progress of an anæsthesia that the circulation is in a satisfactory condition. Two obvious guides to this are the colour of the patient's face and the force with which cut arteries spout. As regards the colour in circulatory failure, one would naturally expect a pallid face, and this indeed is the rule. It must not be forgotten, however, *that cyanosis may sometimes be cardiac in origin.* Cases do sometimes occur when a bluish tinge is seen on the lips, ears, and nostrils, apart from any obvious cause of oxygen starvation. In these we may reasonably suspect that the right heart is failing, and take measures accordingly.

Another valuable index to the state of the circulation is the "skin reflex," that is, the speed with which the circulation returns to an area of the skin which has been pinched. The student should train his eye by occasionally pinching the lobule of the patient's ear, and observing first the white area so produced, and later the rate at which, in a normal case, the healthy colour returns.

## Abnormal Phenomena in Anæsthesia.

It is not intended to furnish here any account of matters more suitably treated under the "Accidents of Anæsthesia," which are fully described in Chapter XVI.,

but merely to draw the attention of the student to certain departures from the normal course of anæsthesia which are encountered with varying frequency, to ascribe them as far as possible to their true causation, and indicate methods of prevention.

The abnormalities fall into two classes, those connected with the nervous and muscular systems, and those in which respiratory changes are evident.

### Motor and Nervous System.

*Clonus or tremor* sometimes appears in one or more limbs, even the trunk being affected in severe cases. Ether is practically the only anæsthetic under which the tremor ever appears, and the condition is often spoken of as "ether tremor." It rarely appears in the female subject, being almost limited to powerfully built young men. Coming on towards the end of the second stage, it frequently persists in the deepest of third stages, and in bad cases there is usually no option but to change over to chloroform — always supposing that the tremor will interfere with the work of the surgeon. If it will not, the condition calls for no active treatment, since it is in itself not dangerous.

*Movements recalling to the observer the condition of athetosis seen in the limbs of hemiplegics* are occasionally seen in the anæsthetised patient. The finger of a hand may be slowly moved, or one or other shoulder may be shrugged. The exact cause of these movements is obscure. They occur in all types, both sexes, and at all

ages; they are not necessarily asphyxial, though a trace of asphyxia seems sometimes to conduce to them. They persist for some time after the third stage has been entered, and ultimately disappear without any obvious cause other than the passage of time. It is rare for them to continue more than five or ten minutes after full anæsthesia has been induced. Their practical importance lies purely in this, that the inexperienced anæsthetist, observing some muscular movements still persisting, may take them as an infallible sign that anæsthesia is not complete, and may deliberately take his patient to a deeper level. If in doubt, the anæsthetist must, of course, consult all the other recognised guides, such as the eye reflexes, but once he has seen these movements in a case, and had demonstrated to him *their slow, rhythmical character*, he is not likely to be misled on a future occasion.

*Muscular rigidity* has been mentioned already in Chapter III. When it persists in a patient in whom other signs suggest that a full anæsthesia has been produced, the anæsthetist will usually find that attention to the air-way, and perhaps a whiff of oxygen, will remedy the trouble.

## Respiratory Abnormalities.

The explanation of many variations in the depth, force and frequency of respiration is to be found in alterations in the blood gases, and the student is referred to what was said on the subject in Chapter III.

*Increased depth* is due :—

1. To increased $CO_2$. This can only occur (*a*) if the air-way be obstructed or (*b*) if a closed method has been used and rebreathing has been pushed to excess. In either case, the remedy is obvious.

2. To stimuli from the work of the surgeon. In this case a quick glance at the site of operation or a question addressed to the surgeon will supply the explanation. If the type of respiration indicate a really inadequate level of anæsthesia, the anæsthetist should ask the surgeon to wait a minute while the level is deepened. In any case, one must remember that, if the method is an open one, a period of quiet breathing must necessarily follow (vide *infra*).

*Increased rate* is a much more serious matter, for it probably indicates anoxæmia, the cause of which must be sought out and remedied if possible.

*Shallow breathing* or even slight temporary arrests of respiration arise frequently. During the induction stage they may be due to :—

1. Apnœa or acapnia following voluntary excessive breathing.

2 Using morphia before chloroform (see page 67).

At a later stage, it may be due to :—

1. Acapnia following excessive breathing excited reflexly from the seat of operation. Acapnia is not now generally regarded as a feasible explanation of many failures of pulse and respiratory under anæsthetic, as has already been explained on pages 15 and 42. If, however, in light anæsthesia under an open method, there has been excessive stimula-

tion of respiration from painful impulses originating in the field of operation, a period of quiet breathing, perhaps even complete apnœa, must necessarily follow, as there will have been undue excretion of $CO_2$, and time will be required for it to gather again in the blood and the alveolar air.

2. Direct reflex inhibition of the respiratory centre. An example of this is seen sometimes when the bladder is over-distended by lotion.

3. Impending vomiting, due to too light an anæsthesia.

*Moist sounds* not uncommonly appear. The student's general knowledge of medicine will enable him to decide whether the fluid is likely to be in the pharynx, larynx, trachea, or bronchi. If in one of the first two named, it will suffice to swab out the throat and encourage the patient to cough. If, however, moisture is evidently present in the trachea or bronchi, the condition is one calling for considerable care and judgment. It arises more commonly with ether than with chloroform. Much will depend upon how much longer the surgeon requires to finish his operation. If only a few minutes more are required, nothing is necessary but to cut down the amount of ether being given to the minimum possible. If, however, the surgeon has still a good deal to do, the safest thing is to withdraw the ether and substitute chloroform or a mixture. Be it clearly understood, however, that such a change over is not devoid of risk. If it is to be made, it must be done early, before the patient is cyanosed and almost drowned in his own secretion. In

a neglected case where cyanosis has already appeared, there will be no option but to interrupt the operation, empty the chest by encouraging coughing, and to aid the process by compressing the patient's chest during expiration. Thereafter chloroform may be given, but with the greatest care.

*Gasping and sighing* are not common phenomena but when they occur, call for close notice from the anæsthetist. Excluding, of course, such occurrences in the first stage, before volitional control has been lost, they may be *usually but not invariably ascribed to overdosage or to the appearance of definite surgical shock.* Whenever they are noticed, therefore, it behoves the administrator to overhaul the patient thoroughly, to consult the eye reflexes, the skin reflex, and the pulse, and not to rest until he is assured that there are no other signals of danger to be found.

*Stertor and stridor.* The first of these is caused by flapping of the soft palate. It is a noise low in pitch, resembling ordinary snoring. Indicating as it does that the palatal and therefore probably other muscles, are relaxed, it may if moderate in volume usually be taken as a favourable sign. If it becomes very loud, however, the probability is that the base of the tongue has fallen back ; cyanosis will begin to appear, but will immediately be remedied by pulling forward the jaw or in extreme cases, using the tongue forceps.

*Stridor* is a high-pitched sound produced by approximation of the vocal cords. It has already been dealt with in Chapter III., as have also other forms of *obstructed respiration.*

## False Anæsthesia.

This term has been applied to a condition often seen in children, and occasionally in adults. It is almost limited to chloroform : the author has never seen a genuine case when ether has been in use. It appears very quickly after inhalation has begun : the muscles are relaxed, the respirations quiet and regular, the conjunctival reflex sluggish. A very marked feature is the excessive smallness of the pupil. Obviously then, the condition much resembles a true third stage, but if the operation be begun, the mistake will very rapidly be made evident, for the patient will at once move and cry out. In essence, the condition is simply one of ordinary sleep. It can be recognised by its appearance after a period of inhalation too brief for the induction of true anæsthesia, by the very small pupils and the lightness of the respiration. It will be a waste of time to permit the condition to continue, as the lightness of the respiration delays the taking in of a dose of the anæsthetic sufficient to induce a proper third stage. The remedy is simple,—rub the lips and face smartly with a towel or the hand, when respiration will at once deepen and the pupil dilate. Thereafter, the induction should proceed normally.

CHAPTER VI.

## PREPARATION OF THE PATIENT.

For all but short anæsthesias conducted chiefly by nitrous oxide, the intestinal tract of the patient must receive careful preparation. In doing this, one must avoid excessive starvation and purgation, both of which tend to increase shock.

We will suppose that the operation is timed for 10 a.m. on Tuesday morning. On Monday morning the patient receives an aperient which may be varied a little to suit his tastes and habits. If he has no preference, there is nothing better than an ounce of castor oil. During the rest of Monday, he has a light diet: fish and milk pudding in the middle of the day: a little soup at night. The aperient should operate before 9 p.m. When that is over, the patient retires to bed. During the day he may be allowed to move about his room a little, but should not undertake any exertion.

Realising the profound physiological effect of purgation, many surgeons would nowadays prefer to give the patient the aperient on the Monday night, while others have quite definitely abandoned purgation altogether.

If there be excessive nervousness, or a natural tendency

to insomnia, sulphonal gr. 15 or veronal gr. 8 may be given early in the evening, to ensure a night's rest.

About 6 a.m. on Tuesday morning, a large soap and water enema used to be given, and when this had operated, a cup of tea or a little soup or Bovril was given. Thereafter nothing should be given by mouth. Many surgeons now omit the morning enema, but the cup of tea is of course still given.

The early forenoon is the time of choice for any operation, but if an afternoon time be of necessity chosen, the patient should not be starved throughout the forenoon. A repetition of the early morning meal may be allowed about 11 a.m.

In cases such as gastro-enterostomy, where the alimentary tract will be opened, the preparation must be a little more stringent. It is usual to allow no solids at all the day before. A saline enema may be given an hour or two before operation, when the soap and water has been evacuated.

In Chapter XVII. will be found some reference to the question of *acidosis* following operation under general anæsthesia. Even apart from the clinical entity known as post operative acidosis or delayed chloroform poisoning, there is reason to believe that a very large number of cases show signs of a minor degree of acidosis and that some unfavourable sequelæ, particularly vomiting, if not actually due to acidosis (or rather diminished alkalinity of the blood) are at any rate closely associated with it. For this reason many surgeons now give large doses of alkali (bicarbonate of soda) with sugar or dextrose,

for two or three days before operation, and find the sickness rate in the wards much diminished. For consideration of the theoretical aspect of this question, Appendix III. (page 311) may also be consulted.

There is reason to believe that sugar bears some special relation to the absorption of anæsthetics, especially ether. Prof. Exner of Vienna advocates the intravenous injection of a solution of glucose, 10-12 hours before the operation, and finds that difficult subjects such as alcoholics go under much more easily if this be done. Even if we do not consider this special procedure necessary, there would appear to be every reason why we should take pains to ensure that the patient goes to table not suffering from sugar starvation.

## Preliminary Hypodermic Medication.

This great improvement in anæsthesia was practised many years ago by a few surgeons, but it was only when open ether assumed its present position of pre-eminence that it was widely adopted.

The present routine is to give morphia gr. 1/6, atropine gr. 1/120 to adult patients three quarters of an hour before operation. It has the following *advantages* :—

(1) The nervous fears of the patient give place to a feeling of bien-être.

(2) The secretions of saliva and of mucus from the respiratory mucous membranes are limited.

(3) A little less inhalational anæsthetic is required.

(4) The after vomiting is lessened, and probably the liability to inflammatory respiratory complications also reduced.

The *disadvantages* can be met by proper care and dosage. They are as follows :—

(1) Morphia *plus* chloroform depresses the respiratory centre at an early stage of anæsthesia. Respiration becomes infrequent and shallow, and cyanosis appears before the patient is really sufficiently anæsthetised for the purposes of the surgeon.

(2) The larger the dose of morphia, the more troublesome is this premature failure of respiration.

*The moral* is obvious : give the small doses above recommended and induce with mixtures weak in chloroform, or better still with ether only (see page 131).

Some years ago, before these facts were appreciated, there was a fashion for giving very large doses of preliminary narcotics. The combinations most favoured were as follows :—

### Scopolamine-morphine.

Scopolamine is a form of hyoscyamine and is itself a powerful narcotic. Two or sometimes three doses of the mixed drugs were given at intervals of an hour, the last half an hour before operation. Scopolamine gr. 1/200, morphia gr. 1/8 was the usual formula : some surgeons added a dose of atropine or strychnine with the idea of stimulating the respiratory centre.

The patients went to the operating or anæsthetising room so drowsy that they were unaware of their surround-

ings, and afterwards had no recollection of the actual beginning of the inhalation. So humane a method naturally attracted a good deal of attention, but the serious depression of the respiratory centre which seems inevitable in the method has gradually caused it to disappear from the practice of most surgeons and anæsthetists. At the present day, it is only to be recommended in midwifery practice; to the drowsy semi-conscious condition produced, the name of *Twilight Sleep* has been given. Some details of the use of Twilight Sleep in mitigating the pains of parturition will be found in Chapter XIX.

### Omnopon and Omnopon-scopolamine.

Omnopon is composed of a mixture of several of the alkaloids derived from opium; the makers claim that it produces less after-malaise than morphia alone. It may be given before anæsthesia in doses of 1/6 1/3 gr., either alone or combine with a small dose of scopolamine. It gives quite good results if not pushed to excess.

### Heroin Hydrochloride.

This comparatively modern sedative is used by some surgeons in preference to morphia. A dose of 1/12 gr. is quite sufficient, three quarters of an hour before operation. Atropine should always be combined with it. The author is inclined to think that Heroin is to be preferred to other drugs mentioned owing to its smaller tendency to produce malaise afterwards.

To young children, morphia should not be given, but atropine may be given freely. A child of twelve months tolerates a dose of 1/200 gr. quite well: one of six years, will take 1/150 gr.

In ages ranging from 12 years upwards, greatly reduced doses of morphia may be given. No child under 15 years requires more than 1/12 gr. of morphia at most.

## Synergistic Analgesia.

Under this title Gwathmey and others describe a special technique somewhat allied to the methods so far described. It has been found that the action of morphia is greatly improved if the drug be injected in a 25% solution of chemically pure magnesium sulphate; as originally introduced, Gwathmey's method consisted of several very small doses of morphia injected in such a solution, and followed an hour and a half later by gas and oxygen. In its most recent development, the method is as follows:—

1. During two or three days before operation, the treatment by alkali and some sugar already referred to in this Chapter.

2. Injection under the skin of 200 c.c. of a 4% solution of chemically pure magnesium sulphate, given 1½ hours before operation.

3. Sulphate of morphia in doses of $\frac{1}{6}$th to $\frac{1}{4}$th gr., dissolved in 1.5 c.c. of a 25% solution of sulphate of magnesium. Two or three such doses

are given at intervals of fifteen minutes, beginning $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours before operation.

4. Finally, gas and oxygen is given as the inhalational anæsthetic; alternatively warmed ether vapour, with oxygen.

The patient comes to the table practically analgesic, and goes to sleep without any preliminary excitement. Even with gas and oxygen the relaxation of the abdominal wall is said to be extraordinarily good. After operation, there is a striking absence of nausea and vomiting, and of the painful abdominal distension which is so crisply described by the Americans as "gas-pains."

One fatality following this method has been reported in which the clinical signs and pathological findings strongly suggested magnesium poisoning, but as the surgeons and anæsthetists who use the method continue to speak most warmly of the general results obtained, too much emphasis need not be laid upon an occasional unfortunate result. Accidents happen with all anæsthetic methods if used often enough.

CHAPTER VII

# NITROUS OXIDE.

## Special Physiology.

Upon the nervous system, nitrous oxide acts like other anæsthetics, but the stages of anæsthesia are passed through so rapidly that a second stage can hardly be distinguished. It is rare for struggling or excitement to be manifest, unless air or oxygen be admitted at the same time, when the effect which led Humphrey Davy more than a century ago to apply to nitrous oxide the name of "laughing gas" is very evident indeed.

Upon the other systems of the body, nitrous oxide has little if any effect in itself. The essential point to remember in connection with nitrous oxide administered unmixed with air or oxygen is that there is an *inevitable element of anoxæmia*. The larger part of the oxygen normally carried by the red blood corpuscles is eliminated and replaced by $N_2O$: oxygen starvation is therefore of necessity present. In other words, the "vicious circle of asphyxia" (*see* Fig. 5) is entered, and muscular spasm is bound ultimately to appear. Moreover, the blood-pressure rises very materially as a result of the lack of oxygen. That no harm results to the normal healthy

patient from this rise is due to the fact that the gas does not in itself poison the heart muscle, which can therefore stand up to the extra strain of working against higher resistance, so long as the process is not carried to extremes.

## Apparatus.

Nitrous oxide is supplied by the makers as a fluid condensed in steel bottles or cylinders, and only becomes gaseous upon being released from them. In passing from the fluid to the gaseous state, heat is of course lost, and it will be noticed that the end of the cylinder which is

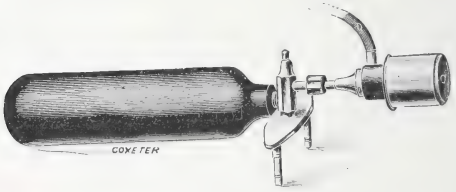



FIG. 11.—Nitrous oxide cylinder on frame with Coxeter regulator.

in use becomes rapidly crusted over with frost. Ice, moreover, forms in the small channel at the head of a cylinder, and is apt from time to time to block it. This trouble may be mitigated by the use of the regulator shown attached to a cylinder in Fig. 11: inside the appliance is a diaphragm controlled by a strong spring, which dams back the flow and prevents to some extent those sudden spurts of gas which are the origin of the freezing.*

* Full cylinders must not be left in direct sunlight for any prolonged period. During the present heat wave (July 1923) omission of this precaution caused an explosion in a London operating theatre.

The cylinders are of various sizes and designated after the number of gallons of gas which they will supply : 25 is the smallest size, 50 or 100 are more usual ; anything up

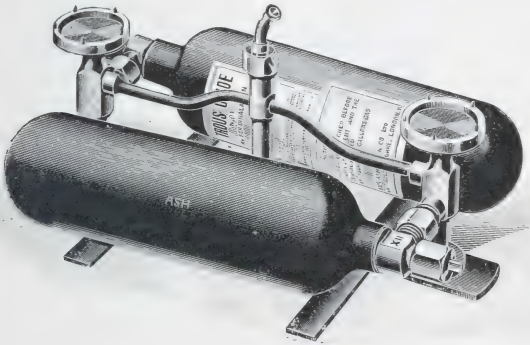


FIG. 12.—Frame for adapting vertical cylinders to foot use.

to 500 is occasionally met with in hospital practice. Moreover the cylinders are of two types, called respectively

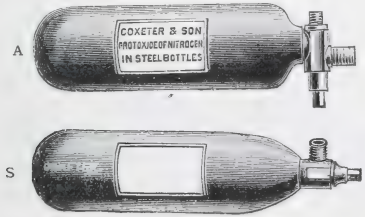



FIG. 13.—Two types of nitrous oxide cylinders.
A Horizontal or angle type. S Vertical type

*vertical* (for use in the upright position), and *angle* for use in the horizontal position (*see* Fig. 13).

The cylinders are fixed in frames of various types of which examples are seen in Figs. 12 and 14.

Upon each cylinder, of whatever size or type, will be found a label stating its weight when full and empty, the difference representing the weight of the contents when the bottle is full. For instance, in the case of the 50-gallon cylinder the weight of its full charge is 15 ounces. Weighing the cylinder is the only certain means which

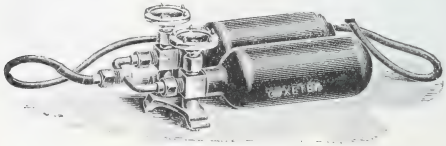


FIG. 14.—Two angle cylinders clamped on frame with spiked foot keys in position.

we have to estimate how much of the charge remains. The student will readily appreciate therefore that once a cylinder has been used at all there is always a risk of the supply of gas from it running out during an administration. It is for this reason that cylinders are habitually used in couples, one of which is always supposed to be quite full. To this one it is well to attach a label marked "full," and care must be taken to replace at once a cylinder known to be empty. In this way we always have upon the frame one cylinder partly and another entirely full.

By whatever makers the cylinder is supplied it will be found that the thread upon the outlet pipe is the same,*

* This does not apply to American cylinders.

and the metal nipple figured in Fig. 14 will fit it. To the distal end of the nipple, a rubber tube is attached which leads to a rubber bag usually of 2 gallons capacity

FIG. 15.—Complete $N_2O$ apparatus, showing twin cylinders, supply pipe, 2-gallon bag, 3-way tap, and facepiece.

The remainder of the apparatus may be of several types.

Fig. 16 shows the ordinary *Barth three-way* tap with facepiece; the indicator on the tap has three possible positions designated on the dial as "Air," "Valves," and "No Valves." If the tap is pointed backwards towards the bag at the position marked "air" the end of the bag is closed and the patient is breathing air only. With the tap in the middle position of "valves," the inspiration of the patient will draw gas from the bag, but the expiration closes the valve which is now in operation at the orifice of the bag, and will open the expiratory valve which conducts the expired air into the general atmosphere. In the third position of "no valves" the patient breathes both in and out of the bag.

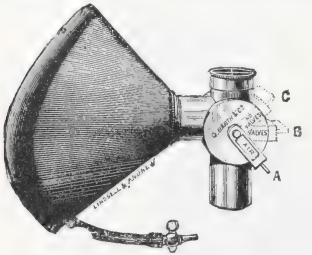



Fig. 16.—Barth 3-way $N_2O$ trap.

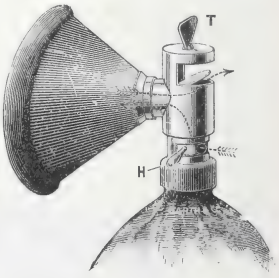



Fig. 17.—Hewitt's wide-bore gas valves.

Fig. 17 shows the Hewitt type of valves. The calibre of the orifices through which respiration takes place is greater than in the Barth three-way tap, and to that extent this type of valve is to be preferred. Although differently arranged exactly the same possibilities are present in it.

The *facepiece* is sometimes made of celluloid with an inflatable rubber edging. The object of this type of facepiece is that the colour of the lips may be appreciated by the anæsthetist during the administration. The preferable plan is to make the whole facepiece of rubber with an inflatable border. Such a facepiece made by a good maker will last many years, and is much more stable and reliable than its celluloid competitor.

## The Care of the Nitrous Oxide Apparatus.

This is a matter of considerable moment, particularly to those who do not use their apparatus every day. After use, the valves, facepiece, and bag should be disconnected from each other, all moisture wiped away from the bright parts, and the bag hung up with its open end downwards, and preferably in a warm room. If re-breathing has been extensively practised it is well to wash the bag out with some carbolic lotion before hanging it up. The rubber valves in the valvepiece are liable to lose their elasticity, particularly if kept in a cool place after becoming damp. From time to time the valvepiece should be taken to pieces, the valves carefully dried in front of a warm fire and powdered over with a little talc.

## Administration.

Most commonly nitrous oxide is administered to a patient sitting in a chair. Care should be taken that the respiration of the patient shall not be obstructed by tight

clothing round the throat or chest, and that the head and neck are neither unduly flexed nor extended upon the shoulders. The patient should not have any solid food for two hours before the anæsthetic. At the last moment he should be instructed to empty his bladder. Artificial dentures if present should be removed, and, if the anæsthetic is being given for the purpose of the extraction of a tooth, it will be necessary before applying the facepiece to insert between the teeth a dental prop. (*See* Fig. 5.) Standing to the left and slightly behind the patient the anæsthetist's first step is to secure a good apposition between facepiece and face. This is best done by working from above downwards: that is to say, secure first a good fit at the bridge of the nose, and then approximate the remainder of the rim of the facepiece to the cheeks and lower jaw. During this stage the indicator of the tap is kept at "Air."

Working with the left foot the administrator now opens the head of one of the cylinders with the foot key. It is wise first to have loosened this with a hand key, and leave it just "on the swing," otherwise one's boots are apt to suffer! Gas is allowed to flow into the bag until it is partially, but by no means tightly distended. The patient is instructed to breathe naturally and easily, and during the whole process the anæsthetist should converse with him in a quiet easy way. The tap is now turned to "valves" and the patient begins to inspire the gas, a supply of which is allowed to flow steadily from cylinder into bag. After a few breaths of the gas, when the sensibilities of the patient are a little dulled, it is wise

to allow the gas to flow a little more freely and to distend the bag. This exercises upon the patient a slight *positive pressure*, which has been proved both experimentally and practically to increase the rapidity of the absorption.* The valves are left in operation for some thirty or forty seconds, after which time the supply of gas should be cut off and the tap be pushed over to the position of "no valves" for further twenty seconds. This should be ample to secure full gas anæsthesia.

*The phenomena* seen in nitrous oxide anæsthesia are so different from those of any other that a few words must be said about them. Within a few seconds of the inhalation beginning, the colour of the patient shows evidence of the presence of the gas in his blood. The normal complexion changes first to a dull pink, and very rapidly to the definite blue of cyanosis. The *eye symptoms* are of the utmost value. Very early the pupil begins to dilate, and the eyeball tends during the first twenty or thirty seconds to rotate as if the patient were looking for some object in his field of vision. In full anæsthesia the eyeball, however, comes to rest, usually pointed downwards. The pupil is widely dilated, the conjunctival reflex is almost or even entirely abolished, but the corneal reflex is still brisk. *The respiration* tends to become steadily deeper and more frequent, and in the later stages stertor at least, if not stridor, usually develops. *The muscles* under ordinary nitrous oxide anæsthesia are rarely entirely relaxed, but the limbs hang motionless, and it

* This can be done to a very limited extent indeed if the ordinary valves here described are used. *See* page 97.

is only if an attempt be made to move them into some abnormal position, that one appreciates the persistence of muscular tone.

A phenomenon peculiar to nitrous oxide anæsthesia is observed in its deepest stage. Designated as *jactitation*, it consists in a tremor beginning in the limbs, but spreading from them to the trunk if its development is allowed to proceed. It is a finer movement than that described under "ether tremor" (page 58), and wholly different in type from the athetosis referred to on page 59. Jactitation is almost wholly a phenomenon of anoxæmia, and is therefore definitely an indication that the process of oxygen starvation has been carried as far as is permissible.

*The signs of fully developed nitrous oxide anæsthesia* then are :—

1. Deep regular snoring respirations.
2. Dilated pupils.
3. Rotation of the eyeball downwards.
4. Loss of conjunctival but persistence of corneal reflex.
5. A colour of the skin definitely blue, but not blackish blue.
6. The commencement of jactitations.

*The signs of overdose are* :—

1. An enormously dilated pupil not re-acting to light.
2. Loss of corneal reflex.
3. A blackish blue colour.
4. Jactitations fully developed
5. Failing respirations.

The final arrest of respiration in nitrous oxide anæsthesia is usually painfully sudden. Upon the respiratory side the only warning is one or two gasps, and even that is sometimes absent. The paralysed pupil and the jactitations are the most useful signs of overdose.

The above, then, may be taken as an account of what one expects to see in a normal gas anæsthesia during the induction stage. For the great majority of cases, nitrous oxide is given for the purpose of rendering painless the extraction of a tooth, and it is, in this large class of case, the induction stage only which need be considered. It requires only some fifty to sixty seconds to bring the patient to the stage described under the heading "fully developed anæsthesia," and when that has been attained, the mask may be removed and the operation begun. From the moment of removal of the mask, however, it must be noted that the patient begins to breathe fresh air and to eliminate the $N_2O$. The period of anæsthesia available to the surgeon or dentist during which he must perform the operation, is therefore very small. In thirty seconds the patient has frequently recovered sufficiently to begin to feel pain, and it is rare to secure more than forty-five or fifty seconds by the use of a single dose of nitrous oxide.

## Nitrous Oxide and Air.

If the nature of the operation does not necessitate the removal of the mask from the face, it is possible to maintain nitrous oxide anæsthesia for some considerable time. The exact length of that time varies a good deal

with two factors—the type of patient and the experience of the administrator. Heavily built muscular patients are not easily dealt with by prolonged gas anæsthesia (unless with admixture of oxygen as explained in Chapter VIII.). Of far greater importance, however, is the other factor. The student can easily be taught to give a single dose of gas for the extraction of a tooth, or the momentary incision of an abscess. He will, however, be wise to secure a good deal of practice in that class of work before attempting to prolong gas anæsthesia for more than a minute or two.

With reasonable skill and experience and the utmost care, it is, however, perfectly possible to prolong nitrous oxide anæsthesia for periods of five, ten, or even fifteen minutes in the average healthy patient. As soon as the signs of full anæsthesia appear, the valve tap is pushed back to "air" for the space of one inspiration and one expiration, and then at once pushed back to "no valves." By this manœuvre, one inspiration of air is permitted to the patient, whose colour at once shows amelioration, or at any rate no further progression of cyanosis. The admission of air is repeated every third, fourth, or at most fifth respiration. After the first minute or so of this cycle of events, it is obvious that the contents of the bag will be composed of a mixture of nitrous oxide, air, and $CO_2$ in proportions quite impossible to calculate. It is therefore best to push the indicator to "valves," and allow the bag to be emptied by the suction of the patient's inspirations. The cylinder head is then opened by the turning of the foot-key, and the bag filled again with gas.

The cycle of "air" and "no valves" is then begun again for another minute or so.

It must be understood that by this process, it is not to be expected that an ideal anæsthesia can be produced. Some movement of the patient will not improbably take place when sensitive structures are cut or handled by the surgeon, and at no time will the muscles be entirely relaxed. Such an anæsthesia is therefore only suitable for a limited class of case, but does admirably for, say, opening an abscess, exploring its interior, and removing from it a sequestrum or an easily found foreign body. During his service in Macedonia the author had not at his disposal any of the appliances later to be described under the heading of nitrous oxide and oxygen, and found "gas and air" a most useful form of anæsthesia for the requirements of military surgery as seen in a Base Hospital, under active service conditions.

## Contra-indications to the Use of Pure Nitrous Oxide Gas.

In the healthy subject, there is no safer anæsthetic than nitrous oxide when administered properly and limited to its proper province.

From the account given of the physiological action of the gas it will, however, be obvious to the student that in a limited class of case its use is not permissible. Such cases fall into two categories.

*Firstly, cases in which an asphyxial element already*

*exists will have their condition greatly aggravated by the substitution of $N_2O$ for the oxygen in their blood.*—Already caught in the vicious circle of asphyxia, nitrous oxide would but push them deeper into the vortex. Examples of such cases are patients suffering from tumours or inflammatory swellings in the neck which are pressing upon the air passages. In passing, one may note that it might be the desire of the surgeon to submit an individual case falling into this group to the operation of tracheotomy for the immediate relief of the condition. The short space of time required for this little operation might well tempt the unwary to choose nitrous oxide as the anæsthetic, and in point of fact such an error of judgment has more than once been made with fatal results.

*Secondly, no patient suffering from any condition which will be aggravated by a sudden rise of blood-pressure, should be submitted to nitrous oxide undiluted by oxygen.*—Examples of such conditions are cases of *dilated right heart* with weakened cardiac musculature.

Such hearts could not be expected to work against a peripheral resistance suddenly raised, say, from 120 mm. of Hg, to 180 or even 200 mm.—figures well within the possible in deep gas anæsthesia. Similarly, so great an increase of pressure would be dangerous to a patient suffering from an *aneurysm*, or from *extensive arterio-sclerosis* with high blood-pressure.

It will be noted that the above warnings are limited to the use of pure nitrous oxide, that is, $N_2O$ unmixed with oxygen. The extent to which the dangers referred to can be met by the admixture of oxygen in the manner to

be described in the next Chapter is largely a matter of the skill and experience of the administrator.

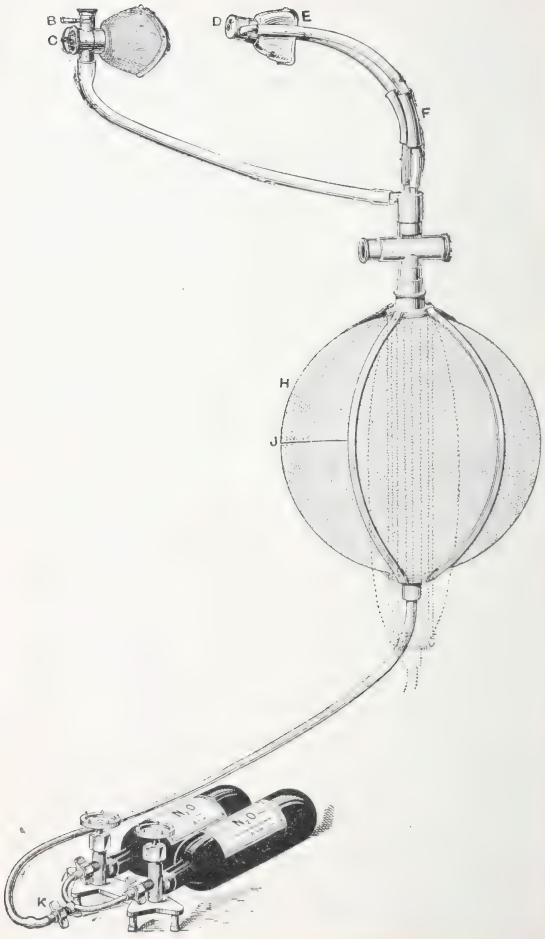
## Nasal Methods.

The object of using this route is to be able to continue the administration throughout the period in which the dentist is doing his work. The essentials of a suitable apparatus are :—

1. A nosepiece which can be closely adapted to the nose.
2. Two supply pipes from bag to nosepiece.
3. Some means of admitting air to the stream of gas.
4. A two-gallon bag.
5. A supply of gas.
6. A mouth cover with an expiratory valve only.

The patient is instructed to breathe in through the nose, but to expire through the mouth. The gas is supplied under some pressure and the mouth cover ensures that no air is inspired by that route. Some patients find it easier to conduct both inspiration and expiration through the nose, and for their benefit an expiratory valve is also provided in the nosepiece. After unconsciousness has supervened, nearly all patients begin to-and-fro nasal breathing. The mouth cover may then be removed, and if it be desired to economise gas, the expiratory valve in the nosepiece may be thrown out of action.

Air must be admitted in limited quantity through the tap after the first thirty seconds or so ; by a judicious




*For description see bottom of page 87*

regulation of this mechanism, anæsthesia may be prolonged for five or ten minutes. Facility with nasal gas comes only after some considerable practice.

Fig. 18 shows Coleman's Aseptic Nasal Inhaler as made by Messrs Claudius Ash. It has the advantages of being practically self-retaining when once fixed to the patient's face, and of being capable of sterilisation. The designer has largely overcome the difficult problem of admitting atmospheric air to the patient while still maintaining some pressure in the supply of nitrous oxide gas.

Nasal attachments are provided with most of the gas-oxygen apparatuses mentioned in the next chapter. With them good results can be obtained with comparative ease.

For a more detailed account of nasal methods, the student is referred to works devoted entirely to Dental Anæsthesia, such as Luke and Ross' *Anæsthesia in Dental Surgery* (Wm. Heinemann).

FIG. 18.—Coleman's Aseptic Nasal Inhaler (Ash's No. 4.)

The figure shows the gas bag (H) within the compressor frame (J). Above the bag is the special device for admitting air to the desired degree. Two tubes held together by a sliding clamp (F) pass round the patient's head and convey the gas to the nose-piece (E). A side tube leads to the mouth-piece, with its regulating tap (B) to cut off supply of gas when not required, and its expiratory valve (C). The shaded lines show the compressor frame closed for transport.

## CHAPTER VIII.

# NITROUS OXIDE AND OXYGEN.

The account given in the previous chapter of anæsthesia by nitrous oxide and air will have convinced the student that it is a somewhat inelegant method with a limited sphere of usefulness. The reason is obvious. In atmospheric air, oxygen exists only in the proportion of about one to four of nitrogen. To sustain life it is therefore necessary to admit to the anæsthetic mixture an amount of air which leaves too little room for the anæsthetic factor—nitrous oxide. If, however, pure oxygen be used, the nitrous oxide is diluted to a much less degree, and far better results are obtained.

The exact scope for gas-oxygen anæsthesia cannot at present be defined with certainty. The work of Crile, and the experience of the war have done much to enlarge it. We may say that the following are definite indications for its use :—

(1) Minor operations lasting 5–15 minutes, particularly if performed on out-patients.

(2) Operations of any variety upon the subjects of severe shock.

(3) Operations upon patients suffering from acute sepsis.

(4) Operations repeated upon the same subject at short intervals.

(5) The foregoing were the indications to which the author committed himself in his first (1919) edition. The subject has been exhaustively discussed at a meeting of the Scottish Society of Anæsthetists at the end of 1922, and as the result of the opinions expressed there and in other similar discussions, and of his own experience, he now feels that the limits must be enlarged to include a numerous class, particularly of private patients, who desire the advantages of the method, and in whom no definite contra-indication such as alcoholism or excessive muscularity can be seen to exist. In hospital practice, the added cost of the method must be taken into consideration, and the use of the method limited to those patients whose condition definitely demand it.

As regards (3) and (4), the lack of toxic properties in nitrous oxide gas, and the rapidity with which it is eliminated, give it a tremendous advantage over ether or chloroform. To men with shattered bones and extensive damage to soft tissues, badly infected with sepsis, who required repeated opening up of pockets, changing of gauze packs, etc., the advantage of gas-oxygen over ether was evident, and was easily appreciated by the patients themselves during the late war. Even in normal subjects the after-sickness and malaise are definitely less with gas-oxygen than with other anæsthetics.

There are, however, certain *drawbacks* to the method which must be appreciated—

(1) The necessary plant is heavy, bulky, and costly; it cannot be easily transported.

(2) The running cost is high as compared with ether or chloroform.

(3) It has been said by some that gas-oxygen can only be given by an expert. That is a statement too extreme, in the author's opinion. Certainly, of all anæsthetics it is the most difficult to give successfully. Adequate study and proper teaching by an expert are required, but given these two helps, any one can soon learn to administer gas-oxygen for minor surgery. Considerable experience is, however, necessary before the beginner should give it for an abdominal section.

## Apparatus.

A good gas-oxygen apparatus is necessarily rather complicated. The machines in the market are numerous, and of the most diverse external appearance. Certain broad principles, however, underlie all the machines, and it is to be hoped that some one of them will before long become practically the standard. Once that is effected, hospitals and nursing homes could be expected to provide them. So long as every anæsthetist asks for a different machine, they certainly never will do. A good machine must provide means for the following :—

(1) *An even flow* of both gases under perfect control.

(2) *A percentage of oxygen* in the mixture rising

at the will of the administrator from 2 to 15 or 20.* To meet this requirement it is not necessary that any indicator should be provided which shows with mathematical precision what percentage of oxygen is being given. The colour of the patient tells us at once if too much or too little oxygen is being supplied, and all we need in the apparatus is some mechanism whereby we can tell approximately to what extent we are increasing or decreasing the percentage.

(3) *Positive Pressure.*—If the pressure at which the gases are supplied to the patient can be raised a little above that of the ordinary atmosphere, absorption is increased, and a deeper anæsthesia produced. In the author's view, this is an essential point in a good instrument.

(4) *Re-breathing.*—To supply the whole volume of gases required for inspiration during a long operation is costly and quite unnecessary. Yet that is what is being done if the whole administration is conducted upon the "valvular" principle. Moreover, a prolonged inhalation upon the valves tends to remove a great deal of $CO_2$ from the patient's blood and tissues (*see* Chap. IV.). Periods of partial or complete re-breathing do much to deepen respiration, and reduce the cost of the anæsthetic.

(5) *Warming the Gases.*—While not essential, this is certainly an advantage.

* A safeguard provided on some machines is a side lead from the oxygen supply direct to the facepiece whereby pure oxygen can be given if required.

(6) *Addition of Ether Vapour to the mixture.*—Gas-oxygen even well given is hardly capable of reducing to quiescence very robust people, unless the oxygen percentage is kept to an undesirably low level. The merest trace of ether vapour as an adjunct is a great assistance during the stages of the operation where very sensitive structures such as the parietal peritoneum are being handled. The more experienced the anæsthetist, the less will he require such assistance.

## Hewitt's Apparatus.

This, with the exception of one designed by Dr Guy and the author, and described on page 192, is the only machine with any pretence to portability by hand. It does not satisfy all the requirements above referred to, but the fact that it was the first practicable means introduced in this country to give gas-oxygen entitles it to full description. (*See* Fig. 19.)

Essentially it consists of the following :—

(1) A supply of nitrous oxide and oxygen in separate cylinders. Hewitt's own stand held two of nitrous oxide and one of oxygen.†

(2) Rubber pipes of supply for each of the two gases. For convenience, it is sometimes arranged that one of these shall run inside the other.

(3) Two 2-gallon bags. Nitrous oxide is led into

† The amount of oxygen in a cylinder is designated in terms of cubic feet. A cylinder which would hold 100 gallons of $N_2O$ will contain 30 cubic feet of oxygen.

the one, oxygen into the other. The mouth of *each* bag is guarded by an inspiratory valve.

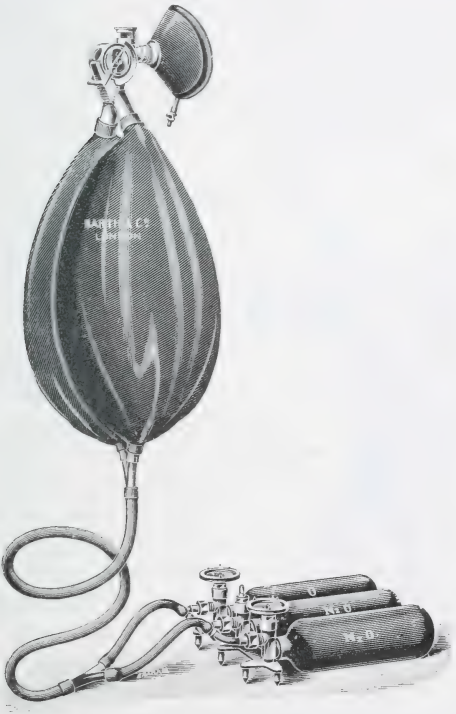



FIG. 19.—Hewitt's gas-oxygen apparatus.

(4) The mixing chamber. Upon the surface of this are marked successively: "Air," "$N_2O$,"

"$O_2$, 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10." As the indicator is pushed from "air" to "$N_2O$," the patient begins to inhale nitrous oxide only, but as it travels into the numerals 1, 2, etc., a proportion of oxygen is added (*see* Fig. 20).

Immediately below the mixing chamber is the *expiratory valve*.

(5) Lastly, there is the *facepiece*, identical with that used for pure nitrous oxide.

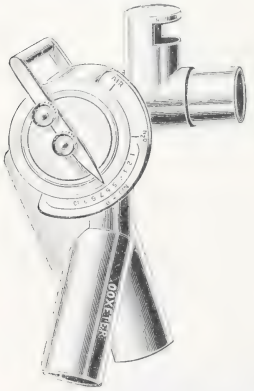



FIG. 20.—Details of the mixing chamber of the Hewitt gas-oxygen apparatus.

It would be fallacious to suppose that the numerals 2, etc., on the dial represent accurately the percentage of oxygen yielded by the instrument when the indicator points to one of these figures, nor did Hewitt ever make such a claim. What the figures do represent is a number of holes in the wall of the mixing chamber, opposite to the aperture from the oxygen bag, which are uncovered one by one as the indicator moves over. The amount of oxygen which enters into the mixing chamber is regulated by the number of these holes uncovered, and also by the tension of the oxygen bag. If the figure on the dial is to be even a rough index of the actual percentage of oxygen present in the mixture, it is necessary to keep the

tension reasonably constant, *i.e.* to regulate the flow of oxygen from the cylinder by manipulation of the foot key. In a brief administration for, say, a dental case, this is not necessary. It is sufficient to fill the oxygen bag once, and then turn off the supply. If, however, a long administration is required, a constant flow of oxygen of just the requisite amount must be secured.

## Administration.

Put the lever at "air," and fill up each bag to an equal and moderate degree of distension. Adapt the face-piece accurately to the patient's face, and then push the lever to "$N_2O$". After a few inhalations, move to 2 of oxygen; regulate the flow of nitrous oxide from the cylinder so that the $N_2O$ bag remains slightly distended. Gradually move the indicator along the numerals until the figure 6 or 8 is reached at the end of about a minute or a minute and a half. Women and children require more oxygen than men. The former are easily cyanosed; if the latter are fed too generously with oxygen, they are apt to become excited. Take as your guide to the amount of oxygen required the colour of the patient, the type of respiration, and the size of the pupil.

The *colour* aimed at can only be learnt by experience, but is best described as a dull pink.

*The Type of Respiration.*— Too little oxygen leads to stertor and even stridor; too much oxygen, to a light almost noiseless respiration, which to the experienced ear is the certain precursor of a stage of excitement. Such

a stage is clear evidence of too much oxygen having been given.

*The pupil* should not be dilated to anything like the degree seen with undiluted nitrous oxide. A moderate dilatation only is to be desired.

*Full anæsthesia* should be reached in 100 - 120 seconds. It is marked by :—

(1) Dull pink complexion ; (2) full respiratory movements with a stertor not exceeding that of gentle snoring ; (3) eyeballs rotated downwards ; (4) moderately dilated pupils ; (5) loss of conjunctival reflex ; (6) corneal reflex present but not very active.

If the object be the removal of a tooth, the mask may now be removed, and the dentist may rely upon a period of anæsthesia somewhat longer than that furnished by pure nitrous oxide. He ought to secure approximately one minute in which to do his work.

Anæsthesia by this apparatus may however be prolonged for an indefinite time if desired. In order to maintain the patient in the condition described above, it will be necessary gradually to increase the supply of oxygen. For this purpose Hewitt added to his mixing chamber a supplementary oxygen supply giving 10 or 20 volumes of oxygen. As a matter of fact, all the necessary supply can be got through the original ten holes *if the tension in the oxygen bag be increased*. The regulation of all this requires, of course, considerable practice and experience.

The signs upon which we rely for warning that the supply of oxygen is insufficient to keep the patient safe, are

chiefly the colour of the face, which must not pass from dull pink to blue, and the size of the pupil.

## Deficiencies of Hewitt's Apparatus.

These are chiefly two :—

(1) There is no means of producing *positive pressure*. Any attempt to distend the nitrous oxide bag beyond a certain point simply leads to escape of the gas through the mixing chamber and out of the expiratory valve even during inspiration. To this defect especially must we attribute the fact that an anæsthesia deep enough for abdominal section is difficult to secure with the Hewitt instrument.

(2) There is no means of securing *re-breathing*. The whole administration must of necessity be conducted "upon the valves." This latter fault is remedied by the modification introduced by *Burns*, who took away the inspiratory valve from the mouth of the $N_2O$ bag, and fitted a cap over the expiratory valve which could be rotated so as to throw the valve out of action. The author first met this modification at a Base Hospital in France, and found it a great improvement upon the original instrument. It is, however, only an imperfect attempt to adopt Teter's chief principle.

## The Teter and Allied Machines.

The rapid spread of nitrous oxide and oxygen anæsthesia in the U.S.A. brought forward a number of machines

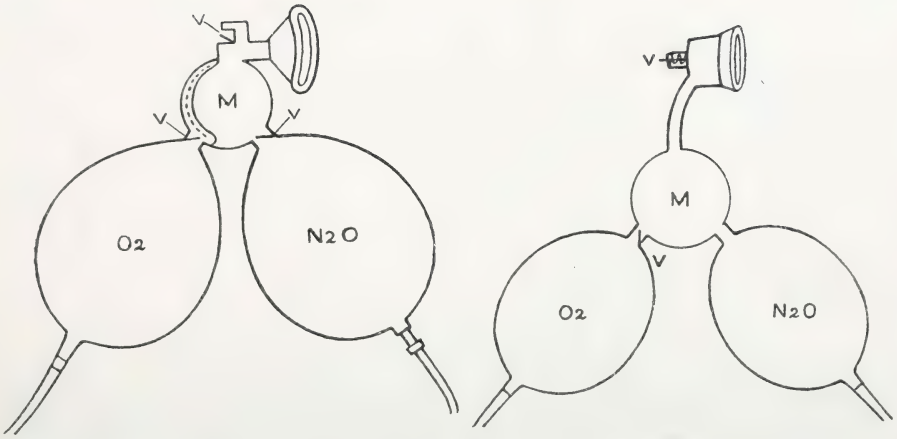



FIG. 21.—Diagrams to illustrate action of (A) Hewitt (B) Teter gas-oxygen apparatus. Note that in A the mouths of both bags are guarded by valves of inspiration, while in B the oxygen bag only possesses it.

of which Teter's was the forerunner; the other well-known machine of the group is the Clarke. They differ in principle from the Hewitt apparatus in that they permit re-breathing and the use of positive pressure. Diagramatically, the two are contrasted in Fig. 21.

The key to Teter's advance is his removal of the inspiratory valve from the mouth of the nitrous oxide bag, and his substitution for Hewitt's rubber expiratory valve, of a *rigid* valve, the lift of which can be diminished or entirely abolished at will (*see* Fig. 22). By damming, as it were, the flow from the expiratory valve, the administrator can oblige the patient to practise a certain amount of re-breathing, and, if he keeps up a free flow of the gases, he can develop a pressure in the nitrous oxide bag definitely exceeding that of the atmosphere.

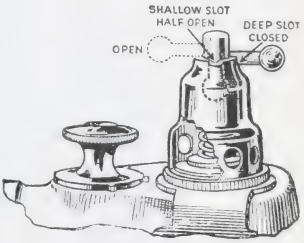



FIG. 22.—Details of the Clarke Expiratory Valve. In the position of the lever marked "open" the valve lifts easily and widely, and the breathing will be purely valvular: in the position marked "half open," the valve lift is diminished, and the breathing is partly valvular, partly to-and-fro. In the position "closed" re-breathing only is possible.

Teter also introduced into his apparatus a means to warm the gases, and to add a little ether vapour to the mixture when required.

The Clarke machine is similar in principle to the Teter, but makes a strong point of the intimate mixture of the two gases produced in the mixing chamber which occupies the centre of the apparatus (Fig. 23).

In both these machines, it will be observed, the two bags for $N_2O$ and $O_2$ respectively are attached to the stand, and the mixed gases are led to the patient by a pipe of wide bore. When re-breathing occurs, it must therefore

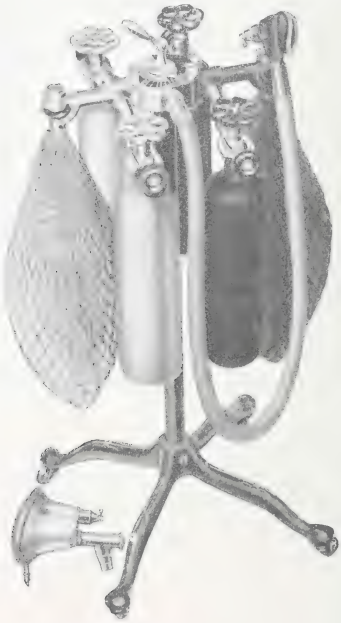


FIG. 23.—The Clarke gas oxygen machine.

be up and down this pipe, but the width of the bore seems to obviate any disadvantage which theoretically might be expected from this form of respiration.

In the experience of the author and of many other anæsthetics, very good results can be obtained from either of these machines.

## Sight Feed Machine.

In the author's opinion, machines based upon this

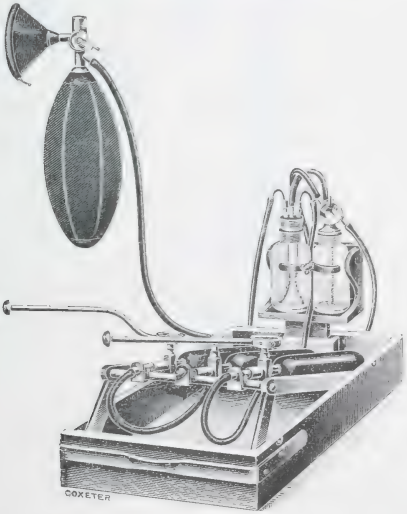



FIG. 24.—Marshall's sight-feed gas-oxygen apparatus. Of the two glass bottles the one to the left is the sight feed, that to the right the ether chamber.

principle are likely to take a prominent place in the future of gas-oxygen. Fig. 24 explains the simple mechanism. Each gas is led through a tube dipping into water contained

in the sight feed mixing chamber. The ends of the pipes are open, and on the sides of each pipe also are a number of holes. If the pressure at which either gas is delivered is small, bubbles will be seen ascending towards the surface of the water from the upper holes only. The greater the pressure, the further down the pipe does the gas carry before all of it escapes through a hole, and one can therefore get an accurate estimate of the pressure from the number of holes through which the bubbles are seen escaping.

Upon the surface of the water, the two gases meet and enter into mixture and are conveyed away by the third pipe which, of course, does not dip into the water.

Once the eye of the anæsthetist is trained to its use, this is a very simple means of gauging the relative proportions of oxygen and nitrous oxide which are being delivered, and manipulation of the cylinder heads combined with visual inspection of the sight feed enables one to strike the right proportions very easily. The nitrous oxide is usually kept at a constant pressure sufficient to ensure bubbles not only from all the side holes, but also a few from the open end of the tube. The oxygen pressure is begun at the point where there is a little bubbling from the top hole only, and is gradually increased until there is a full supply from two holes, occasionally a little even from a third.

Messrs Coxeter have brought out two sight-feed machines designed respectively by Mr Leonard Boyle (Fig. 25) and Mr Geoffrey Marshall (Fig. 24). Either of these are supplied in light portable or a heavier hospital

form. The flow of gases from the nitrous oxide cylinders is rendered more even by the use of Coxeter's gas regulators already mentioned on page 72 and illustrated in

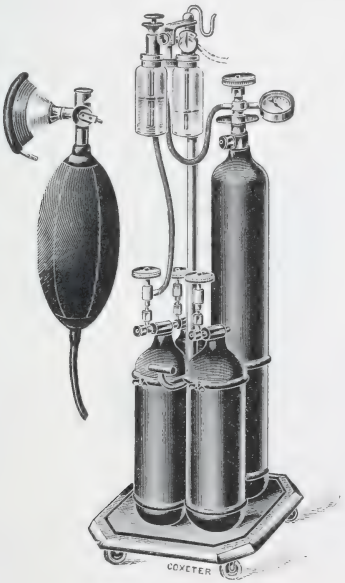



FIG. 25.—Boyle's gas-oxygen machine. Hospital type.

Fig. 11. If oxygen cylinders not of the nitrous-oxide type are used as in Boyle's large apparatus (Fig. 25) it is advantageous to use the special pressure gauge shown in position in that figure and also in more detail, in Fig. 26.

Both the Boyle and Marshall machines are fitted with an ether bottle (shown in the figures in each case, to the right of the sight-feed). A tap at the head of the bottle regulates the amount of the gas which passes through the contained ether: when desired, of course, manipulation of the tap enables one to shut off the ether altogether and administer the mixed gases only.

As originally introduced, the remainder of the apparatus

FIG. 26.—Coxeter's pressure gauge for oxygen cylinders.

consisted simply of an ordinary two gallon bag, Barth 3-way tap, and rubber facepiece. With such an appliance, it is only possible to secure intermittent "positive pressure" (*see* below), a point which the author brought to the notice of the makers. Messrs Coxeter are willing to supply a facepiece and expiratory valve which obviate this defect, being supplied with a mica or rubber expiratory valve the lift of which can be controlled. The Barth 3-way tap is also in circuit for use as and when necessary

## Gwathmey Gas-Oxygen Apparatus.

This is based upon the sight-feed principle but has several special features, of which the most essential are the two control valves for regulating the rate of supply of the nitrous oxide and the oxygen respectively. The design of these controls is believed to be so good that there is with their use, little chance of freezing during the flow of gases. The taps at the heads of the cylinders themselves are opened up sufficiently to allow a flow in excess of that likely to be required, and the fine adjustment is effected by the special control valves.

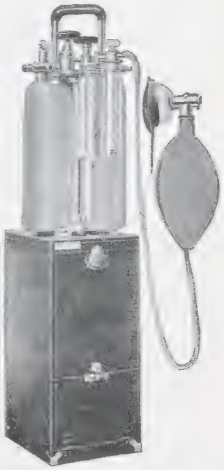


FIG. 27. Gwathmey's gas-oxygen apparatus (portable form).

Fig. 27 shows a portable form of the apparatus with two nitrous oxide cylinders clamped in position on one side of the central stem of the frame, and one oxygen cylinder similarly clamped on the other side; the sight-feed, ether bottle, rubber bag and mask are seen attached.

Fig. 28 shows a frame for four cylinders, two of each gas, but with the cylinders themselves not in place. The circular handles between each pair of clamps control the two special valves already mentioned. From each of them is seen a tube which ascends in the structure of the upper vertical stem, and

leads to the sight-feed bottle which is clamped to the upper horizontal limb. To the left of the sight-feed is the ether bottle, while the third appliance (furthest to the left

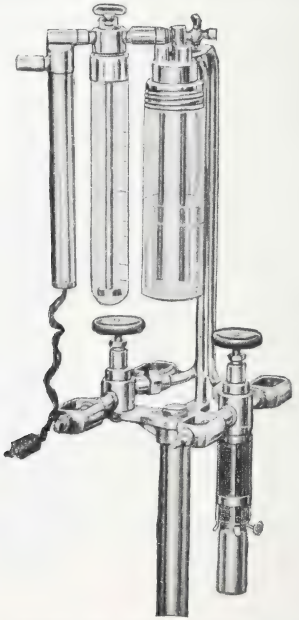


FIG. 28.—Gwathmey's gas-oxygen apparatus, a larger and more complete type than Fig. 27, but with cylinders removed to show details of frame.

in Fig. 28) is an electric heater in which the combined gases are warmed immediately before being led by a delivery tube, to the inhaler and mask (not shown in Fig. 28).

## Administration of Gas-oxygen for the purpose of Major Surgery.

The patient is prepared with the same scrupulous care as if ether or chloroform is to be administered. Half an hour before operation, morphia gr. 1/6 and atropine gr. 1/100 are given hypodermically. The anæsthetist before beginning administration must look over the apparatus most carefully and satisfy himself that every part of it is in perfect order, and that a sufficient supply of both gases is at hand.

The inhalation is begun by the use of nitrous oxide alone, given "on the valves," and at no great pressure. After a few breaths, oxygen is added very guardedly, the proportion being steadily raised during the first two minutes: after that point, a further increase will not be necessary until several more minutes have elapsed. The pressure at which the mixture is being given as judged by the tension of the bag, is also steadily increased and should reach the maximum permissible within a few minutes. Not only positive pressure but also some degree of *re-breathing* is necessary. The means to effect this must differ according to the type of valves available on the instrument.

If in addition to the ordinary Barth 3-way tap (*see* Fig. 16), the special expiratory valve above mentioned is available, provision for partial re-breathing under slight positive pressure can readily be made. The Barth valves are first put out of action by pushing the indicator over to "no valves." With this arrangement, the reader

will remember from page 76 that complete re-breathing in and out of the inhaler bag ensues. We have now to consider the special expiratory valve (*see* Fig. 22 *). If the tension of the spring which controls the valve is relaxed a little, the valve will begin to open with each expiration to an extent which will permit *part* of the volume expired to escape from the inhaler. The remainder necessarily passes back into the bag. It will now be seen that if the flow of both gases from the cylinders be nicely adjusted, it is possible to produce a state of balance wherein the bag is constantly kept in a state of slight tension insufficient really to obstruct the patient's expirations, but enough to exercise slight pressure and so deepen the anæsthesia.

In the absence of this special expiratory valve, intermittency of re-breathing is unavoidable; to this one might take theoretical exception, but in actual practice it is found to give very steady results. The Barth valves are put out of action as above, and total re-breathing permitted until the bag becomes too tense. The Barth indicator is then put over to "valves" and the bag allowed to empty wholly or partially. The valves are then again put in the position for re-breathing, when of course the bag again begins to distend from the flow of gases out of the cylinders.

Under neither scheme should it theoretically be necessary to touch the handles controlling the flow of gases from the cylinder heads at all, once the right rate

* The valve which the author actually uses in the face-piece is somewhat different in design from the Teter valve figured, but the principle is identical.

of flow and the correct relation between the two gases has been established. Actually, this state of perfection is not always attainable, and minor adjustments must be made from time to time.

It is wise, particularly in one's early days, to give a trace of ether vapour during the latter part of the induction stage, and to maintain it until the operation is well under way. Once the anæsthetist is satisfied that the narcosis is proving deep enough for the purposes of the operation, the ether may be shut off and will probably not be required again.

Remember that *depth* of anæsthesia can be secured in three ways (1) cutting down the oxygen percentage; (2) increasing the tension of the mixed gases; (3) adding a little ether. Of these, No. 1 is most undesirable, and if carried to the least excess over a period of more than a minute or two may lead to an accident. No. 3 is the means for the beginner to rely upon, until he learns the judicious and skilful use of No. 2. The anæsthetist who is learning this method of anæsthesing must resolve that nothing shall tempt him to overstep the stage of dull pink colour, and moderate pupils. If with gas-oxygen alone, he cannot get a satisfactory anæsthesia without resorting to oxygen starvation, let him not be ashamed to turn on his ether.

Abdominal relaxation sufficiently complete to permit the surgeon to explore the abdominal cavity with ease, is not readily secured by gas-oxygen in a patient of robust type. Fortunately, it is the weakly or the severely shocked who really *need* this form of anæsthesia, and in them abdominal relaxation is fairly easily obtained.

Professor Crile, as has already been explained, does not rely upon the inhalational anæsthetic alone. He infiltrates each layer of the parietes with novocain, thus producing a local anæsthesia. If this method be faithfully carried out by the surgeon, a most complete relaxation of the muscles can be secured.

Some American authorities now advocate the preliminary use of magnesium sulphate injected subcutaneously before gas-oxygen as described on page 69 under the title of Synergistic Analgesia, and state that by this technique abdominal relaxation can be attained with ease.

## The Blood Gases in Nitrous Oxide and Oxygen Anæsthesia.

No one should embark upon the administration of this form of anæsthesia, particularly for prolonged cases, until he has thoroughly mastered the contents of Chapters III. and IV. In itself, nitrous oxide is a marvellously innocuous drug, but its administration may imply profound changes in the proportion of oxygen and $CO_2$ carried in the blood. At the risk of repeating himself, the author would again emphasise the following points :—

1. A certain amount of re-breathing is not only economical, but is also physiologically sound, in that it prevents the patient suffering from $CO_2$ deficiency.

2. The type of breathing is our best guide as to

the limits to be set to re-breathing. A depth and urgency of respiration, which in the conscious subject would obviously indicate real respiratory distress, will equally plainly indicate in the anæsthetised subject, that undesirable excess of $CO_2$ is present in the blood and alveoli, and that less re-breathing must therefore be practised. Sweating of the face is probably also an indication of the same thing.

In making the above statements the author is not losing sight of Cushny's work to which reference was made on page 27. In his (the author's) personal experience the centre does, under nitrous oxide and oxygen anæsthesia, respond quite definitely to prolonged re-breathing and one can only suppose that this form of anæsthesia is not sufficiently deep to prevent some response to $CO_2$ excess, though it is very probable that such response is less than would be seen in the unanæsthetised subject.

3. Quick shallow respirations indicate anoxæmia, and the necessity for increasing the supply of oxygen. The colour of the face and blood will usually give simultaneous warning, but in view of Bohr's discovery (page 46), we must remember that if there has been a prolonged period of deep breathing with the *valves in operation*, there may be $CO_2$ deficiency, and that under such conditions anoxæmia of the tissues, particularly of the nerve centres, may develop, even though the blood contain a fair proportion of oxygen, and be reasonably good in colour. The type of respiration indicating anoxæmia must therefore after

valvular breathing, be taken as final evidence of that condition being present, even though the colour of the face may suggest the contrary. Nerve centres and heart muscles cannot long survive in anoxæmia, and the patient must have the benefit even of the slightest doubt.

## CHAPTER IX.

# ETHER.

The drug commonly known as ether and otherwise described as ethylic ether or sulphuric ether, has a chemical formula $(C_2H_5)_2O$. It is a transparent colourless fluid with a specific gravity of .720 to .723. A brand much used in the States has an S.G. of .713 only, a point which is greatly emphasised by its supporters, who claim that it volatilises quicker and therefore is more powerful in action. The author has in actual practice not found much difference between this brand and any good British one.

Ether is highly inflammable and volatilises readily at ordinary room temperatures. Its boiling point is 96° to 98° Fahr. Whether evaporating from a fabric such as gauze, or from bulk in a jar, ether cools very rapidly, and the fall in temperature soon reduces the ease of its volatilisation. This point is of some practical importance in anæsthetics, and some years ago the author made a number of observations, hitherto unpublished, with a view of ascertaining some definite facts in this connection. His results will be found in Appendix I.

*Ether vapour* is heavy—two and a half times heavier than air. It therefore tends in a room to flow towards the floor, and to remain for some time unmixed with the

general atmosphere. Since it is highly explosive, this constitutes a definite danger if any naked light or open fire is present. Everyone who handles ether should bear in mind these physical peculiarities of its vapour.

Ether is affected by prolonged exposure to bright sunlight, and also by prolonged bubbling through it of air, nitrous oxide, or oxygen.

The period of time necessary for changes of any importance to occur under any of the above conditions, does not appear as yet to have been the subject of any accurate observations, but if there is in any specimen of ether, a material change in appearance or odour, it should either be sent to the hospital laboratory for examination, or presented to the theatre sister for use as a cleaning agent. Such contributions are always gratefully received.

Most of the ordinary impurities of ether are acid in reaction, while ether itself is absolutely neutral. Any specimen which turns litmus paper red should be sent to the laboratory for examination.

## Sources of Supply.

Ethylic alcohol may be prepared either from ethyl alcohol or from methylated spirits. In the former case it carries, however, the cost of the duty imposed upon potable spirit, and since perfectly good anæsthetic ether can be prepared from the latter source, it is waste of money to use the more expensive article.

## Ethanesal.

Recent work by Mackenzie Wallis has shown that absolutely chemically pure ethylic ether is not the most potent compound present in what is generally accepted as "Pure Anæsthetic Ether," very large quantities of it being necessary to produce the anæsthetic state. The anæsthetic effects produced by the samples of "ether" as ordinarily used must, therefore, be due to other substances.

In ether prepared, as is now commonly the case, from industrial spirit, there are many impurities. Of these, three ethers other than ethylic (dimethyl, diethyl, and methy-ethyl ether), together with other substances, such as alcohol, water, and acetone are removed by the methods of purification ordinarily employed, but a trace of another impurity, namely the mercaptans, remains in many specimens generally accepted as "Pure Ether." Wallis removed the last trace of these bodies by distillation with powdered permanganate of potash, and lastly he treated the distillate by anhydrous sulphate of copper, thus getting rid of the last trace of alcohol and water. The result was chemically pure ethylic alcohol, and was found, as already stated, to be practically useless for practical use as an anæsthetic.

J. H. Cotton had already introduced as an anæsthetic, a solution of ethylene and carbon dioxide, in pure ethyl ether, and Wallis found that the solubility of these two substances in the medium of ether was greatly increased by the addition of *Ketones*, and that the result was a

mixture of great anæsthetic potency. Dr Langton Hewer made practical use of this mixture, first on animals, and then on human subjects, and reported on it as being powerful and rapid in action, free from irritant side effects, and as producing few undesirable after results.

Commercially, Wallis' anæsthetic is marketed by Messrs Savory & Moore under the name of Ethanesal.

Physiologists have not so far distinguished with accuracy the pharmacological action of the various chemical bodies present in ordinary Purified Ether, and the following may, therefore, be taken as a resumé of their joint action.

## Physiology.

Ether acts upon the nervous system like other anæsthetics: as compared with chloroform, however, the stage of excitation of each centre before its paralysis is apt to be marked. There is, therefore, in some subjects, a greater tendency to struggle, but healthy subjects properly handled do not show much evidence of irritation of the cerebrum. All, however, show some evidence of stimulation of the respiratory centre, which is not prolonged. *Prolonged deep and rapid respiration under ether is due to other causes than the action of the drug itself.* It is of course seen in "closed ether," but the active agent is excess of $CO_2$, not ether.

The working margin of safety in ether, *i.e.* the stage between loss of spinal reflexes and the poisoning of respiratory centre is much wider than in chloroform.

Some experiments of Waller made many years ago

showed that upon nerve tissue, ether acts much less powerfully than chloroform: in the proportion, he found, of one to seven or eight. These laboratory results have received entire confirmation by later workers who have estimated the actual vapour strength required of either drug to produce or maintain anæsthesia. Roughly, to induce anæsthesia, we require 2 to 3 per cent. chloroform, or 16 to 18 per cent. of ether (*see* Appendix II.).

### The Circulation.

The first effect of ether is a temporary stimulation of the heart, which beats more rapidly and more strongly, thus raising the blood-pressure. This effect is not very prolonged; like all other drug stimulation, it is followed by depression. In the healthy subject properly anæsthetised, such depression is very moderate in degree, and in a normal administration it is probable that the heart, after the first few minutes, is acting very much at its normal speed and force. Ether is, however, a marked vaso-dilator, and the net result upon blood-pressure is a slight fall after the first few minutes.

If the method in use is "closed," the pressure remains slightly raised for some considerable time, usually throughout the administration. The slight anoxaemia induces a vaso-constriction; and the $CO_2$ excess, in the view of Henderson (*see* page 41), maintains a good return of venous blood to the heart and a satisfactory cardiac output. For a note of certain blood changes resulting from ether and other anæsthetics see Appendix III.

### Respiratory System.

In addition to the effect upon the medullary centre already referred to, ether effects the respiratory tract more profoundly than other anæsthetics. The mucous membranes are irritated, and in some cases there is a great outpouring of mucus. Though usually limited to the upper part of the tract (nose, pharynx, and trachea), the irritation sometimes extends deeply into the chest, affecting even the small bronchioles. These unpleasant effects of ether are in the great majority of cases, quite transient: after the first ten minutes no addition to the secretions is noticed. In a minority, however, the effect persists, the whole chest is filled with moist sounds, and persistence with the drug is impossible.

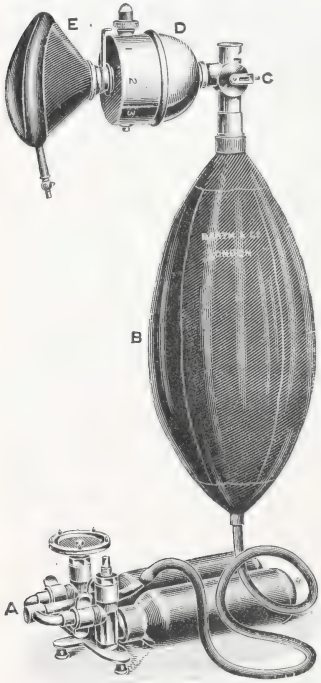



Fig. 29.—Clover's ether inhaler, with nitrous oxide attachment.

*The kidneys* are always slightly irritated by ether, and

if they are or recently have been subject to inflammatory disease, a very acute exacerbation is apt to follow the use of the drug. In the healthy kidney this is not to be feared, nor does it seem to be an appreciable danger where one kidney is sound, even if the other is the seat of gross organic disease necessitating its drainage or removal.

## Methods of Administration.

Many methods have been tried, but those which at present hold the field are :—

(1) Closed-Ether.

(2) Open-Ether, more properly called the Perhalation Method.

(3) The "Vapour" Method.

(4) The Rectal Method (Gwathmey's oil-ether).

(5) The Intratracheal Method, described separately in Chapter x.

## I. Closed-Ether.

The two inhalers originally brought out for this were Clover's in London, and Ormsby's in Dublin. At a later date Hewitt's "wide-bore" modification of the Clover was introduced.

(a) *The Clover instrument* (*see* Fig. 29)* consists of a facepiece, a dome-shaped ether chamber, and a one-gallon bag, usually attached to the top of the ether chamber

* In the figure the Clover is shown with gas valves and 2-gallon bag, arranged for "gas and ether"

by a T-shaped tube. The details of the method by which the amount of ether inhaled by the patient is graduated are best appreciated by unscrewing the milled head at the top of the dome and withdrawing the tube which runs through it (*see* Fig. 30). In the tube will be found two slots, one about half an inch above the other,

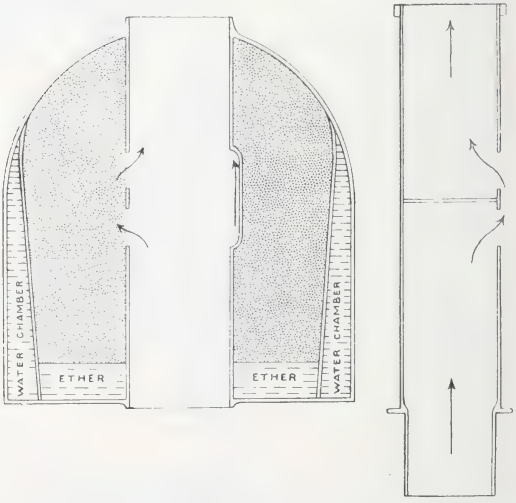



FIG. 30.—Diagram of a vertical section through the middle of Clover's Inhaler. A. shows the ether dome; B. Central tube removed from apparatus.

and each extending for half the circumference of the tube. Between these two slots the tube is divided by a diaphragm. In any case, therefore, air passing up or down the tube must pass in and out of these slots.

Now turn to the tubular space left in the dome piece, and examine visually and with the finger its interior. On the one side of its middle will be found two slots leading into the circular ether chamber which occupies a large part of the dome. On the other side will be found a small cavity, as deep from above downwards as the two slots combined, but *not* communicating with the ether chamber. It is obvious that with the tube inside, if this cavity is opposite the slots in the tube, air will pass up the tube out of one slot and back into the other, without coming into contact with the ether at all. If, on the other hand, the slots in the tube are opposite the slots in the ether chamber, the air passes over the surface of the contained ether, and volatilises some of it.

Intermediate positions of the tube give a condition where part only of the air passes over the ether. The indicator attached to the tube, combined with the figuring "o, one, two, three, full," to be found on the outside of the base of the dome, shows at any moment what proportion of the air is passing into the ether chamber.

To use the instrument, fill the metal measure provided with ether, withdraw the stopper from the ether chamber, and pour in the ounce and a half of ether which the measure contains. Replace the stopper, and blow through the tube to expel any ether vapour which may have appeared in it. Leave the rubber bag at first unattached: the patient will feel more comfortable if during the first minute the top of the tube is open. With the indicator at o adapt the facepiece to the face and allow the patient to breathe up and down the tube. By rotating the dome,

ether is then gradually turned on, until the figure two is reached in the first minute. The indicator is then slipped back nearly to zero for a second, and the rubber bag slipped on during an *expiration*: it must be moderately

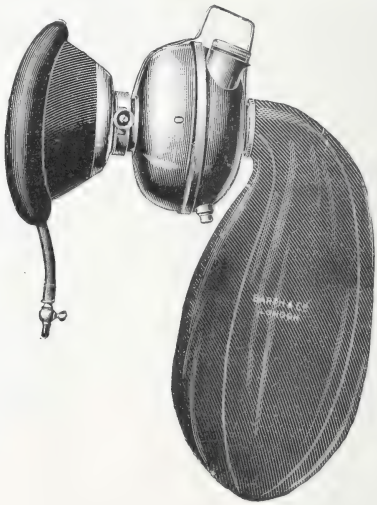


FIG. 31.—Hewitt's wide-bore ether inhaler.

inflated to supply the requisite volume of air for respiration.

The rotation of the dome is again begun and the indicator is made to travel away from the zero, until at the end of about five minutes, it reaches "full." * After

* In many cases, anæsthesia can be induced without pushing the dome past the figure 3.

the first few minutes, it will be necessary to give an occasional breath of fresh air, otherwise an undesirable degree of cyanosis will result, but it must be done with great discretion, or struggling will ensue. At the end of about five minutes, anæsthesia should be fully established. A little extra ether is then poured into the chamber, the indicator pushed back to about "two" and the administration continued. One breath of fresh air is given in every three or four. Spells may be given with the bag off altogether, but during such periods the indicator will require to be advanced a little, and refills of ether provided more frequently than would be necessary if the bag were on.

## Hewitt's Wide-bore.

The principle of this is identical with that of the Clover, but the channels being wider, there is less mechanical interference with the ingress and egress of air. The actual construction differs also, in that to turn on the ether, instead of rotating the dome, one moves the indicator (*see* Fig. 31). The instrument certainly gives results a little better than those obtainable by the Clover, but it is heavier, and rather more bulky.

## Ormsby's Inhaler (*see* Fig. 32).

This consists of a facepiece, a cage made of wire or thin steel slips and containing a sponge; and lastly, a one-gallon bag which fits over the cage. In the facepiece is an air vent, which can be either entirely closed, partially or entirely opened.

To use the instrument, take out the sponge and warm it either by wringing it out of hot water, or better by leaving it a few minutes on the top of a hot steriliser. Push it back into the cage, open the air vent fully, and holding the inhaler upside down, pour on to the sponge a measure full (about half an ounce) of ether. Tell the patient to inhale deeply, and then catch the resulting expiration in the bag by quickly adapting the facepiece to the face at the appropriate second.

Fig. 32.—Ormsby's Inhaler. The cage for the sponge does not show in the figure, it projects upwards from the bag-mount, and is therefore enclosed in the bag.

After a few seconds, begin to close the air vent, when it will be found that the bag begins to wax and wane with each expiration and inspiration respectively. After the first three minutes, the inhaler must be removed, more ether poured in, the air vent opened again partially, and the inhaler again applied to the face. After full anæsthesia is induced, the air vent may constantly be left partially open.

*N.B.*—It must be observed that the air vent is not valved: it is merely an opening through which part of the respired air may pass in and out without going near the ether sponge.

In actual practice, the induction stage of closed-ether is almost invariably assisted by using either nitrous oxide, or a small dose of ethyl chloride as a preliminary: these methods are described in Chapter XV.

The question now arises, what *scope* is to be assigned in modern anæsthesia, to closed-ether methods. Formerly a large proportion of anæsthesias, long or short, were conducted by the closed method, and while the greater number of anæsthetists no longer utilise them to the same extent as formerly, they may still be regarded as of the utmost value in a limited class of cases. They are speedy in action, powerful enough to overcome the most refractory patient, and with reasonable skill very safe. On the other hand, the anæsthesia obtained is not of the most desirable type. There is a great deal of salivation and mucous secretion from the respiratory mucous membranes; the respiratory movements are deeper than in open methods, from the excess of $CO_2$ present in the blood, and this leads to a good deal of heaving of the abdominal wall, which may be most troublesome to the surgeon if he is opening or closing that cavity.* Moreover, after their use more headache, malaise, and vomiting occur than after open-ether, and perhaps a little more tendency to bronchitis or pneumonia. For these reasons, many anæsthetists and surgeons now object to their use in abdominal surgery, though some still adhere to them for the induction stage, passing to the open method when the patient is once well under.

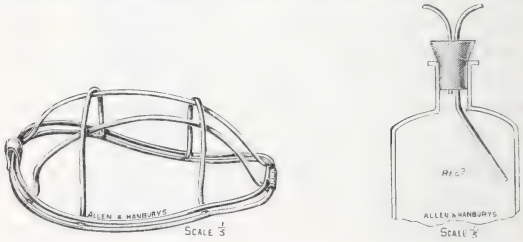
* All these drawbacks are capable of mitigation in the hands of those who use closed-ether habitually: certain anæsthetists still prefer it to the open method, and appear to achieve most excellent results.

## (2) Open-Ether.

As already explained the strictly accurate term for this is Perhalational Ether, but so cumbersome a terminology stands small chance of general acceptance.

## Apparatus.

The essential points in a proper outfit have already been explained (*see* page 44) and are all well met by the mask and ether dropper introduced by Mr Bellamy Gardner (*see* Fig. 33). The mask is covered with from




A B

FIG. 33.—Bellamy Gardner's (A) open-ether mask; (B) ether dropper.

twelve to sixteen layers of gauze, and lies on the gauze ring, shown in Fig. 34A, which completes the fit between face and facepiece. The dropper fits in to the ordinary six ounce dispensing bottle: the long arm dips into the ether, the short one allows air to enter the bottle to replace the ether used. A dropper can also be improvised by using a cork with slots cut at each side and with a gauze or wool wick inserted along one of these. The author

finds these uncertain in their action, however: with Gardner's dropper, a steady flow of *drops* of ether slow or fast as required, can always be obtained once the student has acquired the knack of using the appliance.

Ether is vaporised not only by the inspirations, but also by the expirations of the patient; indeed, more ether will be vaporised by the latter than the former, since the air expired is necessarily warmer than that inspired. The vapour so formed does not rise any great distance from the surface of the gauze, nor does it blend rapidly with the ordinary atmosphere of the room; its great weight compared with air, causes it to flow in a definite column to the floor of the theatre. These statements can be easily checked either by using one's nose to locate the area where the smell of ether is strongest, or by allowing a beam of light to come athwart the mask when the column of ether vapour descending to the floor can actually be seen. By various devices a large part of this vapour of expiration can be retained in the area of the mask, and so caused to be inhaled with the next inspiration, thus effecting economy of ether used, and reducing to a minimum the difficulties referred to in the succeeding section.

To Mr Bellamy Gardner's outfit, the author adds a folded towel, pinned at one corner, so as to form a short cone. The base of this cone embraces the mask and face; through its upper aperture the anæsthetic is dropped on to the mask. The cone can be rotated into the position most convenient for this purpose in any given position of the patient's head (Fig. 34).

*A.*—Open-ether. Ready to begin.

*B.*—Open-ether. Condensing towel in position.

*C* —Open-ether. Correct method of holding mouth and jaw.

FIG. 34.

*D*.—Open-ether. Alternative method of holding mask. The towel and gauze have been removed so as to show the tilting of the mask which this method is liable to cause.

Dr Ogston of Aberdeen (*see* Fig. 35) has had erected on his open ether frame several vertical struts, united at their distal end by a ring. Round these struts a towel is pinned, thus converting the apparatus into a deep, wide-mouthed cone. He lays great emphasis upon the width of the mouth, as he has shown how necessary

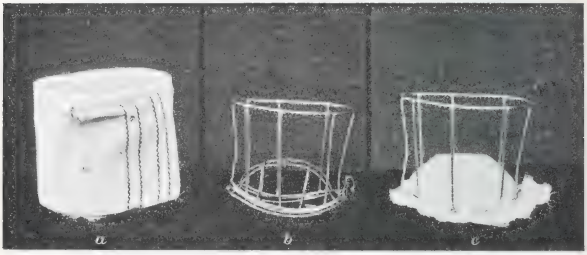



FIG. 35.—Ogston's ether inhaler. *a*. Inhaler fully draped and ready for use. *b*. Frame of inhaler. *c*. Inhaler with gauze only, but before towel is pinned round uprights.

it is to be able to drop ether on to the whole surface of the gauze, a thing impossible to do if the aperture of the cone at the top is narrowed.

## Problems of the Induction Period.

Open-ether is not a powerful anæsthetic, just not powerful enough for one to be sure that one can induce full anæsthesia with it alone, in a powerful subject. The reason for this is shown in Appendix II., and may be here condensed by explaining that some 18 per cent. to 20

per cent. of ether vapour is required to induce anæsthesia, while it is not easy to get more than 14 per cent. off an open mask. How is this situation to be met ?

Reference has already been made to one solution of the problem. *A closed-ether method may be used for induction*, and this practice is widely used. The author does not often adopt this course, fearing that the undesirable features of closed-ether may persist even after the change to an open method has been made.

Another possibility even more widely favoured is to use *chloroform as the inducing agent*, and only to turn to ether when full anæsthesia is obtained. To this plan the author is strongly opposed. It exposes the patient to the risks of the induction stage of chloroform which are much greater than those of the later stages. Moreover, to develop the full advantages of open-ether, a preliminary hypodermic of morphia is essential, and the drawbacks of chloroform *plus* morphia are elsewhere mentioned (page 67).

The use of a *mixture of chloroform two parts, ether three parts*, presents the same disadvantage, but in a degree so much smaller that in powerful or alcoholic patients, the author believes this to be the method of choice (*see* Chapter XIV.).

*Dr Silk* has recently suggested another plan. He has sought to make open-ether easy for the non-expert with a view of encouraging the wider use of so valuable a method. For this purpose he advocates the admixture of one part of chloroform in thirty-two of ether (a dram of chloroform in four ounces of ether). This is to be given

in exactly the same way as perhalational ether, and will, Silk says, give a type of anæsthesia, and a degree of safety, identical with those of pure ether. The author's experience with Silk's mixture is too limited to enable him to offer any opinion upon its merits.

Lastly, there remains the plan of using *ether as the main inducing agent*, but assisting its action by the intermittent and most guarded addition of small quantities of $C_2E_3$ mixture. This is the author's "stock" method; but in teaching it to students, too much emphasis cannot be laid upon the small quantities of chloroform mixture required or *permissible*. *As a consequence of the perhalational method here advocated, every drop of chloroform which appears on the mask will when volatilised, give a very much higher percentage of $CHCl_3$ vapour in the inspired air, than the same quantity exhibited on the ordinary open chloroform mask.* Once the student has grasped this essential fact, ordinary care and intelligence will enable him to guard against a danger which is only existent if unappreciated.

Ogston by the use of his special mask states that he finds no great difficulty in inducing by perhalation ether only even in powerful subjects. The author, however, has had such steadily good results from the method described, that he feels inclined to adhere to it. He is inclined to think that by using just the faint trace of chloroform above indicated and so avoiding the necessity for using quite so powerful an ether vapour as would otherwise be necessary, the result to the patient both

immediate and remote, may possibly be just a little better than if reliance is placed on ether only.

## The Administration.

For many of the hints given in this section the author is indebted to Dr W. J. Ferguson of New York, and Dr Hornabrook of Melbourne.

Success in inducing with open-ether is attained only by attention to a number of small details. The student who thinks that some of these are too trifling for his notice is usually the man who informs you that induction by open-ether is impossible, the fact really being that he has not taken the trouble to learn, or has never had proper tuition. The following are the points demanding attention :—

1. Always give a dose of morph-atropine or other narcotic, half to three-quarters of an hour beforehand.

2. See that the patient is comfortable on the table. Prop up his head and shoulders a little with pillows. In powerful subjects Hornabrook tilts the whole table down.

3. Adhere strictly to perhalation and to the drop method. You will never induce with open-ether if the whole volume of the respired air does not pass through the gauze.

4. Chat to the patient as long as consciousness can possibly persist. Tell him he is doing very well. Don't shout complicated instructions at him as to how to breathe: it annoys and muddles him.

5. When the gauze ring and the mask are in position, allow one or two drops of ether to fall on the mask, then

pause : in a few seconds the mild ether vapour so formed will soothe the upper respiratory tract, and prepare it for the stronger vapours yet to come. This does not waste time—it saves it.

6. When the administration is again begun, attend closely to the rate of dropping. At first not more than one drop in three or four seconds is wanted. The full rate of dropping cannot be attained for at least ninety seconds. Let the drops fall on the whole surface of the gauze, not only on one part of it. This prevents freezing.

7. Give no mixture for the first ninety seconds ; thereafter some five to ten drops every half minute or every twenty seconds according to type of patient. Have the mixture bottle handy so that no time is wasted in changing bottles. Stop the addition of mixture as soon as full anæsthesia is attained.

8. Slip the folded towel over the mask and tuck its base well round the chin and face. Do this only after the first two minutes have elapsed.

9. As soon as the neck muscles are relaxed, turn the patient's head over to one side, and let the hands assume the position described in Chapter III. and illustrated in Fig. 28c.

10. The student is warned to discourage the too early attentions of the nurse or house-surgeon. These officials are naturally anxious to "get the patient ready for the Chief" and are apt to start "cleaning-up" before the patient has lost all consciousness. A man who is doing his level best to go to sleep, derives neither pleasure nor

profit from a wholly unexpected dab of ice-cold methylated spirit upon his umbilicus.

By the use of the method here advocated, induction is singularly easy and successful in good subjects. The struggling stage is either not represented at all, or appears only in the form of the lifting of a limb and a slight occasional pause or catch in respiration. Full anæsthesia is often announced audibly, by the commencement of a gentle "blowing." Once it is heard, the anæsthetist may rest assured that a workable level of anæsthesia is either present or not far off.

## Amounts of Ether required.

If the above instructions are followed, the amount of ether required is not excessive. Anæsthesia is attained after the use of about $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 ounces of ether and one or two drams of mixture. The next forty to fifty minutes demand about another four or five ounces of ether; no mixture at all. Some practice is required before these small figures are attained. The more practice, the less ether is required.

### III.—Vapour Anæsthesia.

In a sense, all forms of ether anæsthesia are vapour methods, but in all forms so far described, the patient has to vaporise the drug himself: in a true vapour anæsthesia this is done for him, and the mixture of air and ether vapour propelled towards him. One of the

keenest advocates of this method is Dr Gwathmey of New York. He lays great stress also upon the necessity of warming the vapour, claiming that this measure will prevent the loss of heat to the patient incidental to the warming up in the air passages of the cold vapour usually supplied by other methods. Pembrey and Shipway have carried the matter further and shown that by warming the vapour inhaled, we maintain body heat to a quite definite degree. It is not only a matter of mechanically transferring so many calories from the apparatus to the patient. The metabolism of the patient himself is stimulated; this alone could account for the fact that among patients who inhaled ordinary unwarmed ether vapour, the rectal temperatures rose in 16.6 per cent., fell in 76. per cent., and was unchanged in 8.6 per cent., while with warmed vapour, it rose in no less than 35.8 per cent., fell only in 44.5 per cent., and was unchanged in 19.8°.

## Apparatus for the Vapour Method.

In 1913, Karl Connell described such an apparatus, which was then in use at the Roosevelt Hospital, New York. The ether was vaporised by dropping it into a warm chamber. Air was pumped into the chamber, and carried the ether vapour in known percentage, and at known pressure as shown by gauges. Such mechanism is ideal, but would certainly be rather costly. Its great value was that it informed us with certainty what proportions of ether in the atmosphere were necessary to induce and maintain anæsthesia (*see* Appendix II.).

A simple mechanism was brought out shortly afterwards by Dr Shipway, of Guy's, and is known as Shipway's warmed ether apparatus.

It consists essentially of the following parts (*see* Fig. 36):

(1) A small hand bellows (B).

(2) An ether bottle, with tube for delivery of air

FIG. 36.—Shipway's warmed ether vapour apparatus.

stream deeply into the fluid: the exit tube of course does not dip in. The bottle stands in a metal pan in which water at about 75° Fahr. is to be placed (E).

(3) A thermos flask (W) in which is a metal tube

(U). The etherised air passes along this tube, and picks up heat from its walls. The thermos is filled with water at about 120° Fahr.

(4) A mask upon which a towel or gauze is to be stretched: the rubber tube bringing the air and ether is brought through the covering material and delivers the anæsthetic vapour in the region of the mouth.

(5) To the above, there may be added a small chloroform bottle (C). In specimens of the instrument containing this convenience, there has, of course, to be a regulating tap (T) at the head of the ether bottle, which will divert more or less of the air stream towards the chloroform.

This little machine, somewhat resembling a cruet stand in its appearance, was widely used in France. Owing to the kindness of the Edinburgh Red Cross Committee, one was provided for the Base Hospital with which the author proceeded to Salonika, where he used it extensively. The impression of it formed by himself and others was that it was peculiarly easy to maintain with it a steady level of anæsthesia. It had, however, no claim to banish post-anæsthetic bronchitis and pneumonia, of which in spite of much anxious care and thought, a fair number of cases were seen during the winter time (*see* page 218).

In using the machine, it is necessary to remember that from the physical point of view, one is providing from the machine a small part only of the total volume of air required by the patient.

The bellows is quite small: one squeeze of the hand

will not supply more than about the equivalent in volume of one or two fluid ounces. The larger part of the volume required by the patient has to be obtained from the general atmosphere, so that the percentage of ether which may be as high as 25 in the exit tube, will be greatly lowered by the time it reaches the patient's respiratory tract.

The actual strength of ether breathed by the patient will depend upon :—

1. The force and frequency with which the pump is compressed. (*N.B.* It is of course useless to pump during expiration).

2. The depth of ether in the bottle.

3. The temperature of the water bath in which the ether bottle stands. The warm water should only be put in at the last moment before starting, otherwise very strong ether vapour will collect on the surface of the ether, and the first puff of the bulb will expel a highly irritant vapour towards the patient.

With specimens of this machine which have the addition of the chloroform bottle, it is perfectly possible to conduct even the induction stage of anæsthesia ; a mere trace of chloroform vapour will be sufficient. It is unnecessary to give detailed instructions for the use of the machine. A preliminary consideration of the above physical facts, together with a little cautious practice, will enable the student rapidly to acquire facility with the method.

## The Ether Bomb.

The instrument to which the designers, Drs Pinson and Wilson of Manchester, have given this alarming title, is also really a warmed ether vapour apparatus. Fluid there is enclosed in a metal chamber which, when in use, is immersed in boiling water. The only outlet for the ether vapour is controlled by a needle valve which is

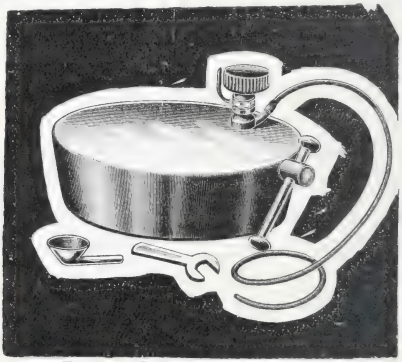


FIG. 37.—The Pinson Ether Bomb.

gradually lifted as the milled head shown in Figs. 37 and 38 is rotated. The face of the milled head is marked as is the face of a clock, and the degree of its rotation is referred to in terms of so many minutes past the hour. When the indicator points to the hour (zero) the needle valve is completely and securely closed, but as the head is rotated to 5, 10, 15, etc., minutes past zero, more and

more ether vapour escapes. As the fluid ether in the chamber is boiling, the vapour escapes under pressure; no bellows is necessary.

As the vapour leaves the chamber, it will, of course, be ether vapour, *warmed but not diluted with air*; the delivery tube is led through the gauze of an open ether mask, and the patient's own inspirations will dilute it by drawing atmosphere air also through the gauze.

During induction, it may be necessary to move the

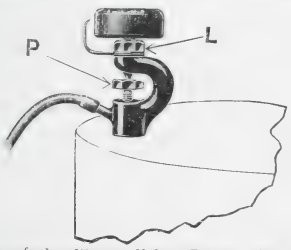



FIG 38.—Details of the Pinson Ether Bomb. P is the packing nut which needs to be tightened occasionally when the action of the valve gets loose. L is the lock-nut for re-setting the pointer.

indicator as far as 40, but after the patient is under this can gradually be reduced to 15 or 20.

Each appliance is tested and guaranteed by the makers* to stand a much higher tension than can possibly develop in the chamber even when immersed in boiling water and completely closed. In the most recent design, a safety valve is provided which should remove the last cause for anxiety.

* The Condensed Gas Company, 59-63 Grosvenor Street, All Saints, Manchester.

### IV.—Rectal Etherisation.

For such operations as the removal of jaw or tongue there are obvious advantages in being able to introduce ether vapour to the blood per rectum, since the mouth and air passages are thereby left free for the attention of the surgeon.

Many years ago this was attempted by vaporising ether and propelling the vapour through a tube high up into the rectum. This method was abandoned, as it led to a good deal of inflammatory trouble afterwards. Recently, Dr Gwathmey suggested a new method of utilising the rectal route which has largely overcome this objection.

## Gwathmey's Oil Ether Method.

This consists in passing into the rectum a mixture of olive oil and ether. The bowel is first carefully washed out, and an hour before operation, the patient receives a hypodermic of morphia, gr. $\frac{1}{6}$; atropine, gr. $\frac{1}{120}$. A suppository of chloretone gr. v is also passed into the rectum to act as a local sedative. Half-an-hour later, the patient is put into the left lateral position, a soft catheter attached to a funnel is passed some six inches up the rectum, and the mixture of oil and ether poured into the funnel. It is wise to take at least five minutes to introduce the whole dose

The following table shows the dosage required :—

| Age of Patient. | Strength of Ether in Mixture. | Quantity of Mixture required. |
|---|---|---|
| Under 6 years | 50% | One ounce to each 20 pounds body weight (no preliminary morphia) |
| 6 to 12 years | 55% to 65% | Do. do. |
| 12 to 15 years | Do. | One ounce to each 20 pounds body weight (but use $\frac{1}{12}$ gr. morphia) |
| 16 years and upwards | 75% | One ounce to each 20 pounds body weight with $\frac{1}{8}$ gr. morphia as a preliminary |

In practice, then, for the ordinary adult, one uses eight ounces of the mixture, six ounces of which are pure ether. The oil and ether require to be shaken together, but remain blended long enough for introduction.

In five or ten minutes, the patient begins to feel a rather pleasing numbness and tingling in the lower, and later the upper extremities, and drops quietly to sleep in about twenty minutes. In a large proportion of cases, it is necessary to deepen the anæsthesia by the use of the open mask for a few minutes, but once a deep anæsthesia has been thus obtained, the absorption from the rectum will balance the loss in expiration and maintain a good anæsthesia for three-quarters of an hour at least.

On return to bed of the patient, the nurse passes two tubes placed side by side, as high into the rectum as she can ; the end of a Higginson syringe is inserted into one

of them, and a considerable quantity of soap and water is pumped gently into the bowel, escaping down the second tube. The washing must be continued until all smell of ether is removed. Finally the soapy water itself is washed away by a little saline.

Unless there be some pre-existing local inflammatory disease of the rectum (in which case the method should not be used), there are no unpleasant sequelæ after oil ether. The chief objection to the method is the amount of labour thrown on the nursing staff, which is so considerable as to bar it from adoption as a routine. This should not, however, be allowed to prevent its use in the limited number of cases in which it is strongly indicated. These are :—

(1) Panic-struck cases who cannot face the ordeal of ordinary methods.

(2) Nose, throat, and tongue operations where intratracheal ether is not available.

CHAPTER X.

# INTRATRACHEAL INSUFFLATION OF ETHER.

Intratracheal insufflation consists in driving a current of air under pressure, through a tube introduced by way of the mouth and larynx, deeply into the trachea. The current of air which is continuous, returns between the tube and the wall of the trachea, and escapes through the mouth and nose.

## Certain Physical Considerations.

The work of Meltzer and Auer has demonstrated that this insufflation of air into the trachea under adequate pressure ventilates the pulmonary alveoli, and enables the normal diffusion of gases to be carried out for many hours, independently of all respiratory movements. If the air in its passage under pressure is made to pass through a chamber containing ether, we are enabled to introduce into the pulmonary alveoli, ether vapour of varying strength, and, by this means, to maintain surgical anæsthesia.

The Actual Process of External Respiration consists in the absorption of oxygen from the alveoli into

the blood of the lung capillaries, and the elimination of carbon dioxide from the lung capillaries into the alveoli. The oxygen has to be brought from the outside to the alveoli, and the carbon dioxide has to be conducted from the alveoli to the outside. Between the outside and the alveoli is the long airshaft, consisting of mouth and nose, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles. In natural respiration the conduction of oxygen inwards, and of carbon dioxide outwards, is carried through by a complicated pumping mechanism. In ordinary inhalation anæsthesia, this mechanism is entrusted with the task of introducing ether vapour into the alveoli.

In intratracheal insufflation the work of this natural pumping apparatus is taken over by an artificial mechanism. In considering the justification for this, the following points are to be noted :—

(1) The patient is unconscious not naturally so as in sleep—but unnaturally as the result of drugs ; there is therefore a probability that the elaborate natural mechanism may not work smoothly—especially is there a danger that the free airway may be interfered with. Intratracheal insufflation obviates this danger.

(2) By means of the artificial mechanism, air is brought with some force to the mouth of the bronchi, and thus a more rapid and more powerful diffusion of gases takes place.

(3) The mechanism ensures the maintenance of a current of air blowing forcefully from the trachea and larynx through the pharynx, mouth and nose.

This re-current continuous air-stream effectively prevents the entrance of blood or any infectious material into the bronchi and air cells, and thus the danger of septic lung troubles is obviated.

(4) In certain intrathoracic operations the normal respiratory mechanism is deliberately interfered with. Intratracheal insufflation by the constant maintenance of sufficient positive pressure, prevents or regulates the collapse of the lung which occurs when the thorax is opened, and thus obviates the necessity for the somewhat elaborate positive and negative pressure cabinets and masks which had been devised for intrathoracic operations.

(5) Incidentally it may be noted that intratracheal insufflation of air provides us with an excellent means for performing artificial respiration. Many instances have now been recorded of its utility in this respect. Dr Elsberg records the case of a patient who had taken morphia with suicidal intent, on whom artificial respiration by this method was kept up for 12 hours, without any respiratory movements taking place, recovery ultimately ensuing.

## The Apparatus.

This consists of (*see* Fig. 39) :—

1. Instrument for producing air current (A).
2. Ether chamber and various regulating taps (B).
3. Device for warming vapour (C).

4. Safety valve (D).

5. Manometer (E).

6. Intratracheal catheter, with rubber tubing linking up the various parts of the apparatus (H).

1. The Air Current is obtained either by means of an ordinary glass-blower's foot bellows, or an electric motor may actuate a rotatory blower which produces a current of air. The blower may be made to rotate at a speed varying from 50 to 1000 revolutions per minute (*see* Fig. 31).

The foot bellows is simple and inexpensive, and there

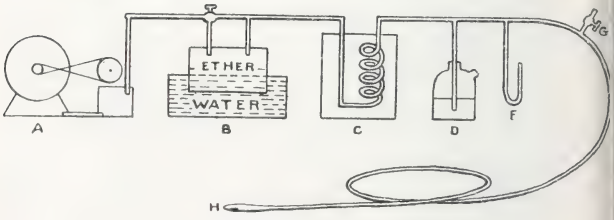



Fig. 30.—Diagram of intratracheal apparatus.

is no reason why it should not be efficient. The electrically rotated blower is more efficient, ensures a smoother air current, and saves much labour.

2. The Ether Chamber.—Ether vapour may be produced by either of two methods. Fig. 41 shows Kelly's instrument where air is blown over the surface of a considerable quantity of liquid ether, the ether chamber itself being immersed in a water-bath. Dr Meltzer*

* Trans. xvii. Internat. Med. Cong. Sub-sect. (vii.) Part i.

maintains that the effectiveness of the etherisation is proportional to the diameter of the ether bottle. In this connection it may be well to recall certain points pertinent to the subject of etherisation. A satisfactory etherisation depends on the establishment in the blood and tissues of an ether tension of definite strength.

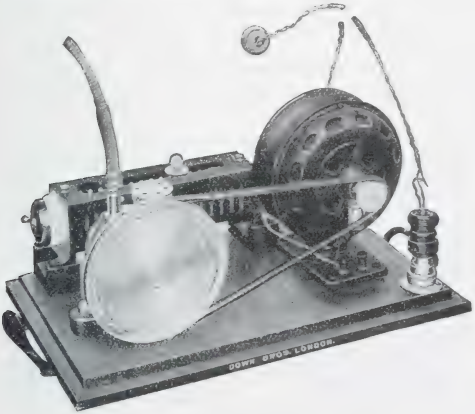



FIG. 40.—Electric blower to supply current of air for intratracheal anæsthesia.

Boothby * states that this tension should correspond to about 15 per cent. of ether vapour in the alveolar cells. "If when this tension has been established, less than 15 per cent. ether vapour is administered, outward diffusion occurs from the tissues and blood to the air and the anæsthesia becomes lighter."

In an apparatus such as we are describing the strength

* *Journal* Amer. Med. Assoc., Sept. 1913.

of the ether vapour depends on and is influenced by a variety of factors, among which the following may be specially noted :—

(a) *The diameter of the ether chamber.*—The larger the diameter the stronger will be the ether vapour. The chamber is generally kept two-thirds full : the less the empty space in the chamber the stronger will be the vapour.

(b) *The rapidity of the air-current.*—The larger the amount of air passing over the ether the more

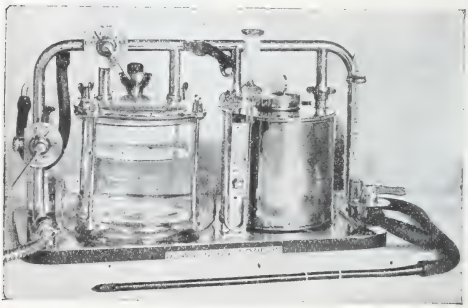


FIG. 41.—Kelly's intratracheal apparatus.

rapid will be the vapouration, with the result that the temperature of the liquid ether will rapidly fall and the stength of the ether vapour in the air will be correspondingly lowered.

(c) *The temperature of the liquid ether.*—The higher the temperature of the liquid ether the stronger will be the percentage of ether vapour in the air.

If the ether chamber is placed in a bath of water which is maintained steadily at an adequate temperature and if the rate of the air flow remains constant, a constant strength of ether vapour will be given off. It is well in this connection to remember that the boiling-point of ether is low and that a very high percentage of ether vapour is readily obtained if the temperature in the water bath is allowed to rise beyond 80° F. For further information regarding ether percentages *see* Appendix I. and II.

Such an instrument as Kelly's requires at its head a *regulating tap*, movement of which is capable of diverting part of the air stream direct to the patient without coming in contact with the surface of the ether. In this way the maximum strength of vapour may be diluted as and when required.

In Fig. 42 is shown Shipway's instrument. Here the drug is dripped into a chamber, the floor of which is kept warm. The ether volatilises at once and the vapour is carried away by the air stream passing through the chamber. The strength of ether vapour in this instrument is regulated solely by the rate of drip which is in complete control of the administrator.

Whichever method of making ether vapour is utilised the instrument should be capable of producing a maximum at least of 15 per cent. to 18 per cent., and means must be provided to reduce this percentage at will.

3. Device for Warming Vapour.—The warming

of inspired or insufflated vapour has an appreciable influence on the body temperature, and there is a fairly general consensus of opinion that if the ether vapour is warmed there is less likelihood of irritation of the respiratory mucous membrane. * It is to be noted, moreover, that in intratracheal insufflation the natural apparatus for warming the inspired air is put out of action. This warming can be effected by the simple device of carrying the tube through a chamber of hot water after it emerges from the ether chamber.

4. Safety Valve. Dr Meltzer insists very strongly on the necessity of having a safety valve capable of controlling the maximum pressure under which the air may enter into the intratracheal tube. By a simple device, any excess of desired pressure will cause the air to bubble through mercury and thus never reach the lungs. In this way any possibility of accident from undue intrapulmonary pressure is obviated.

5. Mercury Manometer to indicate the pressure in the tube in m.m. of mercury. It has been experimentally established† "that the pressure in the trachea and in the bronchi is only a small fraction of the pressure in the manometer outside of the body, and that the intratracheal pressure grows considerably less with the decrease of the diameter of the intratracheal tube."

* Trans. xvii., Internat. Med. Cong., Sub-sec. (vii.), Part i.

† *See* p. .

6. Intratracheal Catheter. -It is essential to have an instrument of adequate rigidity which can be satisfactorily sterilised. The ordinary coudé catheters, or the silk web white enamelled cylindrical catheters, are suit-

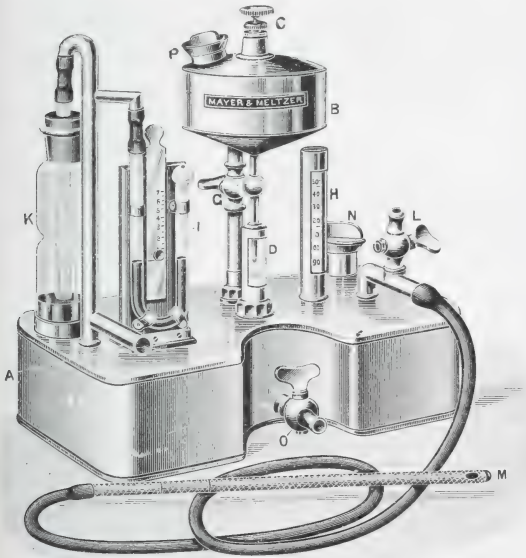



Fig. 42.—Shipway's intratracheal apparatus.

able. The size should be selected from a range of 18 to 25 French. It is preferable to err rather on the side of a small than a large tube. An ordinary adult will require

a tube of about size 22 to 24, a plethoric alcoholic, on the other hand, might need a 25.*

A tube of too large a calibre interferes with the free return of air and spontaneous respiration soon becomes too slow. Expiration is prolonged, active, and laboured, and after a few minutes, respiratory movements may cease entirely. The only way to meet such a situation is to withdraw the tube and insert a smaller one.

Technique of Administration.—It is advisable in adults to administer about three-quarters of an hour before the operation, a hypodermic injection of morphia (gr. $\frac{1}{6}$) and atropine (gr. $\frac{1}{100}$), or of scopolamine (gr. $\frac{1}{100}$) and morphia (gr. $\frac{1}{6}$). The latter combination is more efficacious in alcoholic subjects. In children, atropine alone should be given.

It is to be remembered that intratracheal insufflation of ether is a method of maintaining, not of inducing anæsthesia. Induction is carried out in the ordinary way. When this has been done, the catheter is passed.

*Magill, senior anæsthetist to the Queen's Hospital, Sidcup, who must have a most unusually large experience of intratracheal anæsthesia for jaw surgery, records in the *Lancet* of 14th July 1923, that he now frequently uses two catheters, one connected with the apparatus, the other for expiration only. This ensures a free return passage and enables him to divert the return flow of ether-ladened air away from the face of the surgeon—quite an important point in a long morning's work in a special hospital. Much of the advantage of the method in blowing effused blood away from the larynx is, of course, lost, and a suction pump may be necessary to take its place (*see* page 247). I have twice met with cases where the trachea was so narrowed by the pressure of a thyroid growth that the return flow was seriously impeded—indeed, wholly so. For such a case, Magill's plan seems the most hopeful suggestion. (J. S. R.).

The introduction of the catheter does present some difficulty, but this is largely overcome as skill and confidence are acquired with practice. It may be carried out indirectly, or a view of the glottis may be obtained by the aid of such an endoscope as Hill's, and the catheter inserted between the cords. The latter method is probably the more satisfactory, but it is well to acquire the skill to pass the catheter indirectly as in a certain small proportion of cases there are obstacles to the use of the endoscope.

Fig. 43.—Hill's Direct Laryngoscope.

To facilitate catheterisation the pharynx and epiglottic region may be cocainized with a 5 per cent. solution before induction. Hill'sendoscope (Fig. 43) is distally illuminated by a small electric lamp, which is connected with a small pocket battery. A useful modification of this has been devised by Mr Dott. In it, the catheter is passed along a separate compartment, so that the view of the glottis is undisturbed. The point of the catheter comes into view at the distal extremity of the endoscope and can be guided between the cords into the trachea.

It is essential before attempting intubation, that there should be thorough relaxation. The lower jaw should be so slack that a gag is not required. The head is then placed in the occipito-shoulder position, or is allowed to hang over the end of the table. The tongue is controlled by forceps, and the endoscope passed slowly along its dorsum until the epiglottis comes into view. The point of the endoscope is then passed sufficiently far below the tip of the epiglottis to ensure that it will not slip; too deep insertion must be avoided. The endoscope being held in the left hand, the hyoid bone is lifted up by a tilting movement of the hand. The glottis is thus brought into view. The catheter stiffened by means of a probe is then passed through the glottis into the trachea and the endoscope withdrawn. The bifurcation of the trachea in the adult is at a distance of about 26 cm. from the incisor teeth. The catheter should be marked accordingly, and inserted to a point just short of this. The probe is then withdrawn, and connection made with the air current.

It occasionally happens that unexpected difficulty is met with on attempting to pass the catheter by direct vision. The larynx may be so fixed that the glottis does not readily come into view; or in the case of an intraoral neoplasm the view may be obstructed by the presence of blood. In such cases the catheter can be introduced by the indirect method. The middle finger of the left hand is passed along the dorsum of the tongue until the epiglottis is felt. The index finger is then used to guide the point of the catheter to the glottis through which it is then passed. No undue force must be used. A stilette

should be inserted into the catheter which should be moulded almost to a right angle at its terminal third. If the stilette is withdrawn when the point of the catheter is over the mouth of the glottis, the instrument will, as a rule, slip easily into the trachea.

Occasionally the tube passes into the œsophagus. With care and adequate relaxation such a mistake should not occur, but the possibility of it should be kept in mind. If the operator will abstain from attempting to pass the catheter until such time as he has a satisfactory view of the glottis, mistakes of this kind will seldom occur. The essentials are a good illumination and an adequate relaxation.

Mild glottic spasm may supervene on the passage of the catheter but this rapidly passes off. At first the degree of concentration of the vapour should be low or irritation will result, evidenced by spasm and coughing. The strength of the vapour is gradually increased until the necessary concentration is attained. The pressure should vary according to the requirements of the case and should range between 10 mm. to 25 mm. Hg. The safety valve must be set so as to make any pressure above this impossible.

In the majority of cases the course of anæsthesia is smooth and uneventful ; the colour remains a rosy pink, the pulse is good, and the respirations quiet and regular. It is undesirable that the respiratory movements should be abolished altogether ; their presence indicates that neither the central nor the peripheral respiratory mechanism is being overdosed with ether.

Theoretically, the constant plus-pressure in the lungs

might be thought to interfere with the circulation in the large veins, and in the pulmonary vessels themselves. It is, therefore, well to reduce the pressure in the catheter to zero every minute by opening the tap provided for the purpose for a second or two.

At the conclusion of the operation, before withdrawing the catheter it is well to flush out the lungs with air so as to remove any ether vapour that is present. In a certain number of cases, notably in big alcoholic subjects, difficulty may be experienced in securing a sufficiently deep anæsthesia with good relaxation. It is seldom, however, that patience and the careful introduction of a stronger vapour will not suffice to overcome this. In alcoholic subjects, as previously suggested, preliminary medication with scopolamine and morphia will help. It really becomes a question, if one may put it so, of coaxing the unconscious patient to tolerate an ether vapour of adequate strength.

Dr Clarence Mott* has lately introduced a modification of Kelly's apparatus, the chief features of which are a chloroform chamber similar to that for ether—a flowmeter which, being introduced into the air circuit, indicates the amount of air passing, and dials above the chloroform and ether chambers which state in plain figures the percentages of anæsthetic vapour added to the air-stream under varying conditions of temperature and rate of flow. It is claimed, therefore, that the apparatus is a dosimetric one. A sight-feed nitrous oxide and oxygen bottle has also been added.

* Proc. Roy. Soc. Med., 1920, vol. xiii., pp. 25-38.

Dr Mott, who speaks from a very large experience of the apparatus, is highly impressed with its utility and advantages. Many anæsthetists shrink from administering chloroform in this way, since Nature's ordinary safeguard and danger signal, namely, failing respiration, is largely obviated by the intratracheal method. The provision in the appliances of means to determine with accuracy what percentage of chloroform is being administered should however minimise the risk, which indeed in really skilled hands should be negligable, while the advantages of being able to use chloroform wholly or in part as the anæsthetic for intratracheal use, are very definite, particularly where a very quiet and relaxed abdominal wall is desired.

A description of the details of this machine will be found in Appendix IV. at the end of the book.

## Advantages and Special Indications.

The general opinion of anæsthetists appears strongly to favour the view that the absence of strain and the perfect aëration in intratracheal ether insufflation tend to lessen the shock of operation. The post-operative history of patients also suggests that there is a lessened liability to pulmonary complications as compared with cases in which ether has been administered by other methods. Dr Elsberg* of New York in this connection writes: "The absence of any pulmonary complications has led us to use this method of anæsthesia in all patients in

* Trans. xvii., Internat. Med. Cong., Sub-sec. (vii.), Part II.

whom pulmonary complications were to be feared after an anæsthesia or operation. Thus in all asthmatics, in patients with chronic bronchitis and emphysema, in patients who require gastric resection and the like, we no longer, during two years, have seen the much dreaded post-operative pneumonia wherever intratracheal anæsthesia was used."

In addition, there is ample evidence * that the introduction of a catheter into the trachea and its presence therein does not tend, as might have been expected, to set up any irritation at the time or predispose to subsequent trouble. Apart from these general considerations, which suggest the advantage of a somewhat extended use of intratracheal ether insufflation, the method has obvious advantages in all operations about the mouth, such as those for excision of the upper jaw, those undertaken for the removal of nasopharyngeal growths and various plastic operations involving the nasal and buccal cavities. In such cases the danger of aspiration of blood, mucus, etc., is obviated and the anæsthetist is well out of the surgeon's way, while at the same time an even uninterrupted delivery of ether vapour is effected. In operations for removal of glands in the neck the surgeon has the field to himself, and is not hampered, nor is his asepsis endangered by the proximity of the anæsthetist's mask.

In such operations as laminectomy and nephrectomy the postural difficulties with which the anæsthetist has to contend, and which also tend to interfere with free respiration, are eliminated

* Trans. xvii. Internat. Med. Cong., Sub-sec. (vii.) Part I.

The great advantage of the method in intrathoracic operations has already been referred to.

The introduction of intratracheal insufflation of ether was rendered possible by the pioneer work of Drs Elsberg, Meltzer, and Auer. The writer would like to acknowledge his indebtedness to their writings, of which he has made free use.

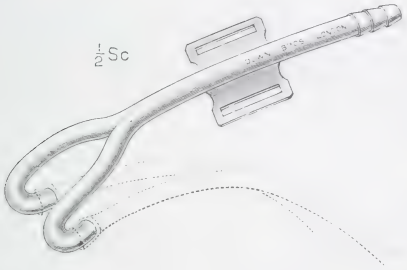



Fig. 44.

## Intra-Pharyngeal Anæsthesia.

Some years ago it was pointed out by Karl Connell of New York that if an anæsthetic vapour is delivered through the nose into the pharynx at some pressure, a type of anæsthesia somewhat similar to that obtained by the true intratracheal method could be obtained. Fig. 44 shows Connell's nasal tubes as made by Messrs Down Bros. One tube is passed along each nostril so as to appear just behind the soft palate. The appropriate depth to which the rubbers should be passed is ascertained in any case by measuring from the lobule of the

ear to the ala nasi. The rubber tubes are connected up by the metal portion shown in the figure to the stream of air and ether from any of the intratracheal apparatuses already described. The nostrils are tightly nipped round the tubes, and if necessary the reverse current issuing from the mouth may be dammed back by nipping the lips, so as to increase the pressure.

This form of anæsthesia is of peculiar value in young children, as it transmits to their elastic chest walls all the positive pressure usually necessary.

CHAPTER XI.

# CHLOROFORM.

## Physical Characteristics.

Chloroform is chemically trichlor-methane, $CHCl_3$. It is a colourless, transparent fluid, with a specific gravity of 1.491 at 17°C. Its vapour is even heavier than that of ether, approximately four times heavier than air. It is not inflammable, but the action of an open fire or naked flame tends to break it up into hydrochloric acid and phosgene, both of which are highly irritant gases to all who breathe them. The patient suffers, but since all the other occupants of the theatre are also affected, warning is given before serious harm has been inflicted.

Chemically pure chloroform is a somewhat unstable product, but the addition invariably made to it by the producers, of a trace of alcohol, prevents any serious risk of decomposition in bulk. It should be neutral in reaction and have an agreeable non-irritating odour: departure from the normal in either respect, indicates the possibility of the presence of acids or aldehydes, and the necessity for referring a specimen to the laboratory.

Like ether, chloroform may be obtained from pure ethyl alcohol or from methylated spirits, and the remarks

made in the chapter upon ether apply to the case of chloroform also. A third source of supply is acetone, from which perfectly good chloroform can be produced.

## Physiology.

Chloroform is an irritant to the skin and mucous mem-

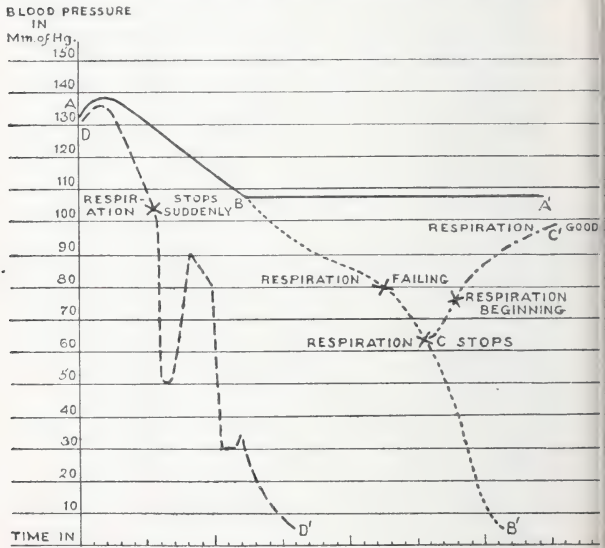



FIG. 45. — Diagrammatic representation of various blood-pressure curves obtainable with chloroform.

Line ABA′ represents curve desired in normal chloroform administration.
Line ABCB′ represents gradual overdosage.
Line ABCC′ represents recovery by inversion.
Line DD′ represents syncope from vagal inhibition: in its course, two attempts of the heart to "escape" are shown.

branes. A drop let on the skin and covered over with impermeable material will produce a deep and painful blister. A drop falling into the eye, if not instantly washed away, produces a very powerful inflammatory reaction, and many eyes have been seriously damaged from carelessness in this respect. Such incidents might prove actionable, and heavy damages be given.

The special peculiarities of the action of chloroform upon the nervous system have already been emphasised in the account given of the physiology of ether (*see* page 110). Its action upon the *circulatory and respiratory systems* has been the subject of many researches, and of much embittered controversy. The literature is therefore very extensive, and the account of it must be severely condensed. The following may be taken as a brief resumé of present day opinion (*see* Fig. 45) :—

(1) In every case of chloroform administration, there is a fall of blood-pressure.

(2) If the drug be presented in weak concentration (2% or less) the fall is gradual and even (line AB).

(3) If the same strength be persisted in unduly, the respiration will cease at a time when the blood-pressure is still well above zero (line ABCB′).

(4) The fall of pressure is due to diminished force of cardiac action, and at a later stage also to vaso-motor paresis.

(5) The cessation of respiration accompanying such a B.P. curve as ABCC′, is due partly to fall of blood-pressure in the vessels supplying the medullary

centre ; partly to gradual poisoning of the centre itself by the drug. That the fall of B.P. in the cerebral vessels is in itself one explanation of the cessation of respiration, was proved many years ago by Leonard Hill in his inversion experiments. Just at the stage when respiration had ceased, the anæsthetic was withdrawn, and the animal inverted into the head-down position. The B.P. in the carotid at once began to rise, and natural respiration was resumed (line A′BCC′).

There remains for consideration the type of blood-pressure curve which is represented on the diagram as DD′, in which a sudden, and frequently fatal, fall occurs during the induction period. Much work was done in the first decade of this century to elucidate the causes which underlay such calamitous incidents, and until quite recently the work of Embley, and of Schäffer and Scharlieb was accepted as having finally proved the following further points :—

(6) With *high concentration* of chloroform vapour, the fall of blood-pressure is rapid, and is apt to become suddenly precipitous (line DD′).

(7) The cause of these sudden falls is inhibition of the heart by over-activity of the vagus* : cutting the vagi always terminates the effect unless delayed so long that the animal is dead : in an animal fully under atropine, these vagal actions cannot be produced.

* The theory of vagal inhibition was accepted as finally proved by the Special Chloroform Committee of the British Medical Association in their report, dated July 1910.

(8) If the heart is inhibited by vagal action, the respiration ceases at once, usually after one deep inspiratory sigh.

(9) An inhibited heart may "escape" from vagal action before the animal is dead: frequently, however, the inhibition persists and the animal dies.

(10) Struggling and breath-holding in the early stages of induction cause sudden falls of blood-pressure. Many observers believe that these falls also are due to vagal activity, others hotly deny this. All were united in believing that to *press* chloroform upon a patient who is struggling and holding the breath, is fraught with grave risk of causing sudden syncope.

(11) The abnormal irritability of the vagus above referred to is a feature mainly of the induction stage, disappearing once full anæsthesia is developed.

(12) It is an undoubted clinical fact that there is a risk of sudden arrest of heart's action if the operation is begun before the stage of full anæsthesia is reached. The accepted explanation of such accidents was furnished by postulating a reflex inhibition acting through the vagal centre already rendered hyper-sensitive by partial chloroformisation.

## Views of Goodman Levy.

This worker has demonstrated in animals that the heart is sometimes thrown by chloroform into the condition of fibrillation—a delirium of the cardiac muscle,

from which recovery is rare. It occurs in the early stage, before full anæsthesia has been reached, and is predisposed to by the infliction of trauma. The practical outcome of this is that the induction stage of chloroform should not be unduly prolonged, and that the operation should not be begun until the third stage is fully developed.

We may summarise Dr Levy's views by saying that in his opinion danger from vagal inhibition is non-existent, and that all the sudden failures of circulation appearing in the induction stage are due to cardiac fibrillation, the essential cause of which is *intermittency* of administration, or the commencement of the operation at a stage before anæsthesia is fully established and the tendency to fibrillation has passed. It must be accepted that Levy has demonstrated the possibility of cardiac fibrillation, and has indicated quite clearly its determining factor, namely intermittency and insufficient depth of anæsthesia. Therein he has certainly done yeoman service to the science of anæsthesia, for the two factors upon which he places all the emphasis are only too prone to appear in the practice of inexperienced and nervous administrators. To the author's mind, however, Levy has gone too far in his attitude that vagal inhibition from the use of vapours strengths of too high percentage, is not to be regarded as a real possibility, or at any rate not a dangerous one. As Levy is one of the strongest advocates of the use of inhalers which will supply to the patient an atmosphere containing a known percentage of chloroform, the difference in view is on most counts not vital, since most workers (certainly the author) strongly agree that the use of very

weak vapours during the induction stage is not necessary —probably not desirable, and that to give chloroform intermittently is to give it badly. Where, however, the author does join issue with Dr Levy is on the treatment of the incident referred to in para. (5). From the very beginnings of the history of chloroform, struggling and breath-holding have always been regarded with great anxiety; the exact causation of the sudden tragedies which sometimes followed these phenomena may or may not be vagal inhibition, indeed Professor Leonard Hill gave of them an explanation which did not need to take any account of the vagus nerve. But in the whole history of the subject one fact stands out clearly, namely that practical anæsthetists and laboratory workers alike were of opinion that if marked breath-holding, with clenching of the jaw and development of a trace of cyanosis, should occur during any stage of chloroformisation, it was the anæsthetist's duty to intermit the administration, to clear the air-way, and to allow one or two free inspirations of fresh air before continuing the administration. Faced with such an incident, the author would still feel it his duty to follow the old rule, but he freely admits that if the principle of administering a constant atmosphere of reasonable chloroform strength be followed, serious breath-holding is very uncommon, and therefore any indication for interruption of the administration rarely present

During his work on this subject, Levy further demonstrated that the introduction into the circulation of *adrenalin* during incomplete chloroform anæsthesia was very liable

to induce fatal cardiac fibrillation. He thus furnished the explanation of a number of deaths which had occurred in the practice of nose and throat specialists. Since the publication of Levy's work, the rule has been absolute that if *adrenalin* is to be used in a case requiring chloroform anæsthesia, the adrenalin must *precede, not follow* the anæsthetic.

## Administration.

Basing upon these views as to the action of chloroform, and upon the lessons of practical experience, we may formulate definite rules for giving the drug.

## General Principles for giving Chloroform.

(1) Give chloroform evenly, not spasmodically.

(2) Increase the vapour strength of chloroform gradually from *zero* until 2 per cent., $2\frac{1}{2}$ or 3 per cent. at most is reached at the end of two or three minutes;* maintain that strength until full anæsthesia is obtained. The degree to which the percentage may be lowered after full anæsthesia has been established, and the time at which such lowering may begin, vary a good deal with the individual patient. It also depends upon the nature of the operation which may or may not demand a deep anæsthesia throughout its course. Many patients need a continuance of the same strength as was used to complete in-

* Levy states that 3.5 or even 4% is necessary for very robust cases, and evidently does not hesitate to use it when he considers it necessary.

duction, for the first ten or fifteen minutes; in some cases it may be necessary to continue it for as long as thirty minutes. Long operations which do not demand deep anæsthesia may frequently be completed under very low percentages (1 per cent. or even less): experience alone can guide administration to a final conclusion as to the correct treatment of each individual case, but in general one tries to use as small a percentage as is consistent with maintaining an anæsthesia deep enough to prevent respiratory reflexes (*see* page 55).

(3) Be guided chiefly by the patient's respiration. Chloroform kills by stopping the heart, but in the immense preponderance of cases, evidence of failure of respiration appears in ample time to give warning of approaching circulatory failure. The eye reflexes give confirmatory evidence of the depth of anæsthesia, but the superlatively important thing is to *maintain a free airway, and be sure the patient is using it.*

(4) If serious struggling and breath-holding occur, withdraw the anæsthetic until the patient "resumes normal."

## Methods of Administration.

The logical application of such general principles would be to use an instrument which gives a definite and known percentage of chloroform, variable at the wish of the administrator. Many such machines have been brought forward, and while none of them have obtained

general acceptance, a description of the best known instrument will be given, as the reader may as a house-surgeon meet with it, and with a surgeon who wishes it to be used.

## Vernon Harcourt's Inhaler.

In principle, this is a "draw-over" instrument; the patient's own inspirations are the motive power. Passing over the surface of the fluid drug, the inspired air picks up from it a known percentage of vapour. The other system available for the construction of percentage chloroform instruments is the "plenum"; in this the vapour is propelled to the patient by a pump.*

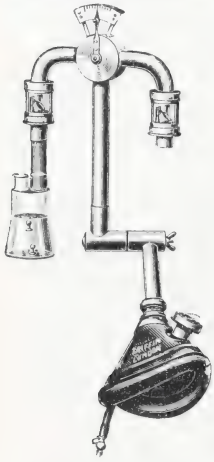


FIG. 46.—Vernon Harcourt's Percentage Chloroform Inhaler.

In appearance, the inhaler resembles the letter T, with a rubber facepiece attached to the lower end of the vertical limb (*see* Fig. 46). The T portion itself is made of metal tubing of a definite size in cross section. One end of the horizontal limb admits pure air, the other, air which has passed over chloroform and picked up from it a certain proportion of vapour. The proportion of the total inspired volume of air which passes through each of the ends is regulated by a lever seen at the junction of

* The Mott instrument described in Appendix IV. could be used as a "plenum" chloroform inhaler.

horizontal and vertical limbs, and the exact percentage of chloroform being inhaled is indicated by a series of numerals marked on the dial over which the lever moves. These figures are correct provided that :—

(1) The chloroform receptacle is not shaken (this would greatly increase the percentage).

(2) The temperature of the chloroform is not allowed to fall below 13° centigrade. To ensure that this cannot take place without the knowledge of the administrator, two coloured beads are thrown into the chloroform. At the desired temperature of the chloroform (16° – 18°C) the blue bead sinks to the bottom, the red one nearly to the bottom. Below 16°C, both beads float, and when this is observed, the chloroform vial is warmed up in the palm of the hand. At the point 16°C, the blue bead sinks and the warming must stop when the red is also sinking, otherwise an undesirable addition to the vapour strength yielded will occur.

(3) The respirations remain of average depth. Abnormally shallow breaths increase the percentage above that indicated on the dial ; abnormally deep breathing has the contrary effect (Levy).

The inlet of the chloroform container may be constricted by a device supplied with the instrument, the use of which causes a more powerful stream of air to be drawn over the surface of the fluid with each inspiration, and thus to vaporise it more quickly. According to the end of this little tube which is pointed downwards as

fitted into the mouth of the chloroform bottle, the maximum obtainable from the inhaler is raised to 2.5 or 3 per cent.

The facepiece is made of rubber, and must be closely adapted to the face; in its side is seen the expiratory valve. Inspiratory valves are present at each end of the horizontal limb.

## Levy's Inhaler.

Levy considers the compensations in the Harcourt instrument as regards alterations of temperature and of depth of respiration are inadequate, and has designed one to take its place. The container is much larger than that of the Harcourt, requiring for its accommodation a separate table. It is surrounded by a water jacket, which may be filled with water at any temperature between 30° and 40°C. A thermometer shows the actual temperature at any moment, and the index scale is provided with a temperature correction which allows the percentage to be read off at any temperature of the bath. (*See* Fig. 47.)

One air vent is permanently open, situated just over the top of the mask; the other air entry is of course over the surface of the chloroform. Levy claims and probably with justice that the principle of exposing a *large surface of chloroform to a weak current of air* (the current of air which impinges on the surface of the chloroform will be weak because much of the volume of inspiration will always be coming in by the air vent at the top of the mask), is more likely to compensate for variations in the depth

of respiration than the principle utilised in the Harcourt instrument. There is, however, no denying that Levy's instrument is not so handy for use.

The great advantage of percentage instruments appears

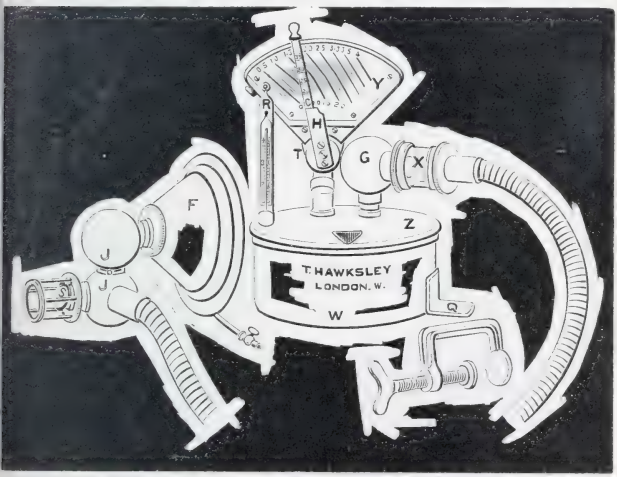



FIG. 47.—Levy's inhaler. The complete apparatus seen from the front. F, Facepiece. G, Globe in which air and chloroform currents mix. H, Index-hand. J, Globes forming a double junction between the facepiece and the tubing. Q, Foot, which is clamped to the edge of a table. R, Thermometer immersed in the water bath. S, Expiratory valve. T, Tap for regulating chloroform supply. W, Water bath. X, Glass valve chamber (containing inspiratory valve). Y, Percentage scale. Z, Cover of water bath.

to the author to be for purposes of teaching and demonstrations. If the student actually *sees* the lever gradually

being moved up to show, say 2, 2½ or even 3 per cent., and then gradually reduced to say 1.5, he begins to appreciate what he ought to aim at when giving chloroform by the ordinary open method.

## Open Method.

The appliances requisite are :—

(1) A mask. Schimmelbusch's is the best known (Fig. 48) : as elsewhere explained, it does not accurately fit the face.

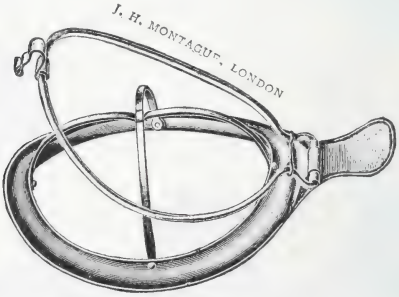



FIG. 48.—Schimmelbusch's mask.

(2) Material to stretch on the mask. The best is two layers of domette or one of flannelette : surgical gauze is so light that heavy drops of chloroform are apt to "spark" through it and burn the skin of the face : lint rapidly becomes sodden ; the drug drips away from its edge instead of vapourising properly.

(3) A good drop bottle, of which many varieties

are marketed (Fig. 49) : it is essential that it should be capable of producing definite *drops :* the old method of intermittent "douching" of chloroform is much less accurate.

It is not possible by the open method to be mathematically accurate with percentages, but the necessary

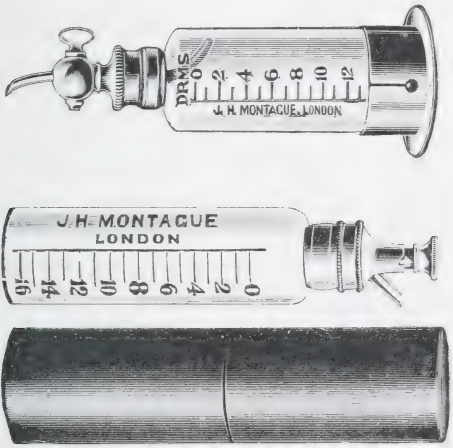



Fig. 49.—Chloroform drop bottles.

appliances are simple, easily transported, and practically always at hand. If the student learns to use it, and while doing so *to think in percentages*, he will achieve as good results as or better than he will with percentage instruments. While he may not have in front of his eyes a dial which shows the percentage graphically, observation

of the patient will inform him whether the percentage being given should be maintained, raised, or lowered. The only remaining point for him to realise, then, is how in practice such regulations of percentage strength can be achieved by the open method. The strength of the vapour will depend upon three factors :—

(1) Nature of the material used on the mask.

(2) Size and shape of the mask and closeness with which it is adapted to the face.

(3) Amount of chloroform exhibited on the mask.

To ensure uniformity of result, two of these factors should be kept constant, and the necessary increase or decrease of vapour strength achieved by varying the third. Always use the same type and thickness of material and the same type of mask, and allow the mask to lie lightly on the face. If the amount of chloroform is then regulated by a strictly "drop" method, results of great uniformity may be obtained by the open method.

FIG. 50.—Covers designed by Levy for use with open chloroform mask.

It is of no value to use more of the drug than will just keep moist a certain surface area of the material ; any quantity in excess of this will run by capillary action to the edge of the material, and so on to the face of the patient, or at any rate into the sulcus at the edge of the mask, if any.

For open administration, Levy teaches the use of a domette cover divided into halves, quarters, eighths, and sixteenths. When thoroughly moistened with chloroform on a mask of the shape and size used by Levy, the resulting percentages achieved are approximately 3.2, 1.6, 0.8, and 0.4. A study of these figures will help the student to think in percentages when administering chloroform by the drop method (*see* Fig. 50). It is to be noted that Levy teaches an open method which is strictly perhalational; the mask fits the face accurately.

## The Junker Inhaler.

This instrument was originally introduced as an attempt to achieve a percentage method. Air is pumped through a certain depth of chloroform contained in a bottle, and the vapour brought to the patient in the face-piece shown in Fig. 51. The calculations by which it was sought to establish this as a reliable dosimetric or percentage method are of no great value. From that standpoint the instrument has not achieved success. It delivers to the patient a *small quantity of high percentage vapour* which is diluted by a much larger quantity of air inspired by the patient from the general atmosphere, and the final percentage inhaled by the patient is therefore no more accurately known to the administrator than in the open method.

The instrument is, however, of considerable value for tongue and jaw cases, where anæsthesia has to be maintained for some considerable time after the mask with

which anæsthesia has been induced has had to be removed, to give access to the surgeon.

The Figure 51 shows the instrument as usually marketed. It consists of :—

(1) A hand-bellows.

(2) Chloroform bottle. A mark cut on this shows the level to which it is to be filled : if more than the

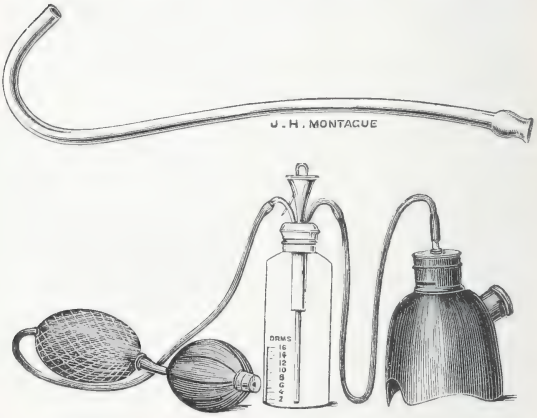



FIG. 51.—Junker's Chloroform Inhaler showing hand-bellows, bottle and mask. Alternatively to the latter, the nasal tube shown above, may be used.

proper quantity be poured in, droplets of fluid chloroform are apt to be blown along the exit tube, with dangerous results.

For convenience and neatness, it is usual to make the exit surround the inlet tube. The entering air bubbles

through the chloroform, and a stream of air and chloroform vapour passes out from the exit tube.* It is unnecessary to give a detailed account of the use of the instrument, but the student must remember the following points :—

(1) The amount of chloroform vaporised will depend on the vigour of the pumping, the depth of fluid, and the temperature of the chloroform. In order to achieve uniform results, it is therefore necessary to keep up a steady but not excessive pumping, to warm up the bottle occasionally by holding it to the palm of a disengaged hand, and to watch that the level of the chloroform does not fall too low.

(2) The pumping should be timed to synchronise with inspiration : a puff of vapour delivered during an expiration will be wasted.

## Advantages and Disadvantages of Chloroform.

The light portable appliances which are alone necessary for chloroform anæsthesia, the comparative cheapness of the method, and the *apparent* ease with which its administration may be conducted, are all great temptations to its use. Those who feel the temptation strong upon them

* The student should be careful to be sure that the bulb is attached to the *inlet pipe* : if by accident it be slipped on to the outlet pipe, the first compression of the bulb will eject a stream of liquid chloroform from the instrument. Omission of this precaution was the cause of fatality very recently.

are advised to remember the following quotation from the writings of Professor Leonard Hill :—

" Chloroform is a drug used by the young anæsthetist with the utmost hardihood, and until he has had the misfortune in his practice to meet with a death caused by it, he derides the danger of the drug, and asserts that its safety merely depends on the care and skill of the administrator. After losing his patient, he falls to descanting on the unavoidable dangers of the drug, dangers which he is now the first to maintain cannot be met by any degree of skill in administration."

The most distressing, the least excusable, and probably the most common chloroform fatalities are seen in administrations given for the most trifling conditions, such as opening abscesses or extracting teeth.

In general, we use chloroform if for any reason ether is not applicable. For examples of cases of this description, the reader is referred to the chapter upon the choice of anæsthetics.

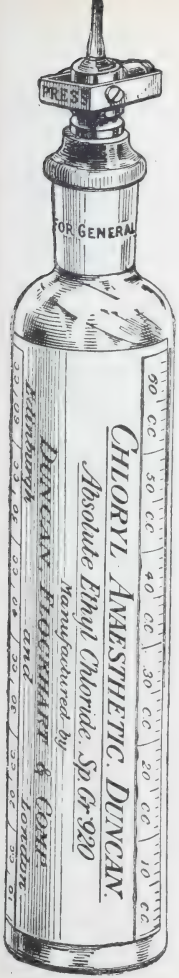



FIG. 52.—Tube of Ethyl Chloride.

CHAPTER XII.

# ETHYL CHLORIDE.

CHEMICALLY this drug has the formula $C_2H_5Cl$. It is a colourless fluid so volatile that it boils at ordinary room temperature. Its vapour is highly explosive, and the fluid itself very inflammable. The drug is supplied by the makers in small tubes with a metal end which can be opened by pressing a little lever (*see* Fig. 52), varying in type with the tubes made by various makers. Two brands are sold by each firm; one is chemically pure, intended for use as a general anæsthetic; the other is not so pure, and is only sold for local anæsthesia. Such a product is not suitable for inhalation.

## Physiology.

The special points in the physiology of ethyl chloride may be briefly summarised as follows:—

1. After a trifling preliminary rise, the effect of the drug is to lower the blood-pressure appreciably. In the human adult subject, this fall becomes appreciable when more than 3 c.c. have been given; if the dose exceed 5 c.c. a fall of 30 to 40 mm. of Hg. is probable,

—occurring as it does within a period of perhaps twenty or thirty seconds, such a fall cannot be regarded as without significance.

2. The cause of this fall is diminished cardiac output from weakening of heart muscle. The vagus though not paralysed, does not appear to be unduly irritable, as it does with chloroform.

3. The respiratory centre is at first perceptibly stimulated and respiration is therefore deeper and quicker than normal. The stimulant effect rapidly passes away and gives place to a stage of depression.

In the majority of cases, death appears to take place from paralysis of the respiratory centre, the heart still showing a little power of contraction after respiration has ceased. There is therefore a fair prospect of recovery if artificial respiration be resorted to promptly.

## Methods of Administration.

### Open Method.

The extreme volatility of the drug has discouraged most anæsthetists from giving it upon an open mask.* Hornabrook, of Melbourne, advocates this system, however. His mask fits the face accurately, and his whole method is strictly perhalational. He uses some 4-6 c.c. of the drug for a child, 6-8 c.c. for an adult, and achieves his anæsthesia in a minute to a minute and a half. He

* Dr J. A. H. Barton of London was certainly the first to describe an open method of administering ethyl chloride, in a paper to the Society of Anæsthetists in 1906, but the author's own trial of the method was prompted by Hornabrook's paper.

also advocates open ethyl chloride as a preliminary to open ether. For some twelve months, the author adopted the method. At the end of that time he came to the conclusion that while it greatly facilitated the induction stage of open ether, it appeared to increase the after sickness. He therefore abandoned it, though rather reluctantly.

### Closed Method.

This is the usual means employed. A variety of inhalers have been produced on the market, one of which is shown in Fig. 53. Essentially all consist of :—

(*a*) A facepiece which must fit the face with reasonable accuracy.

(*b*) A one-gallon rubber bag attached to the mask by a T-piece.

(*c*) A glass vial, with numerals from 1 to 5 marked on the outside to facilitate the measurement of the drug in c.c. Into this the drug is squirted from the makers' tube. The vial is attached to the T-piece (or alternatively the bottom of the bag) by a rubber tube.

The form of inhaler illustrated in Fig. 53 was originally designed by Dr J. W. Bamfield Daniell, then of Edinburgh, and now Lecturer in Anæsthesia at Cape Town, who with Drs Guy and Luke did much to popularise ethyl chloride in this country.

To use such an inhaler, the glass vial is first detached from the rubber tube, and the chosen dose of drug squirted into it. A child of five or six will require 3 c.c., an adult

up to 5 c.c.; this dose should never be exceeded. The vial is then rapidly reconnected with the inhaler. The facepiece is adapted to the face, care being first taken to place between the teeth a mouth prop or a gag. This enables one to get immediate access to the mouth when the inhaler is removed. The patient is then told to breathe deeply once or twice. During the inspiration the mask is lifted slightly, and the ensuring expiration is then caught in the bag by pressing down the mask on to the face. To volatilise the drug there are two alternative methods. In the one, part or the whole of the dose is tipped into the rubber bag by elevating the vial. A far better is the "Vapour" method, almost universally used in Edinburgh owing to the teaching of Dr J. H. Gibbs, who designed it. A tumbler is filled with hot water, and the bottom of the glass vial is allowed first to touch, and after a few seconds to be immersed in it. Some thirty to forty seconds suffice to vaporise the whole of the dose.

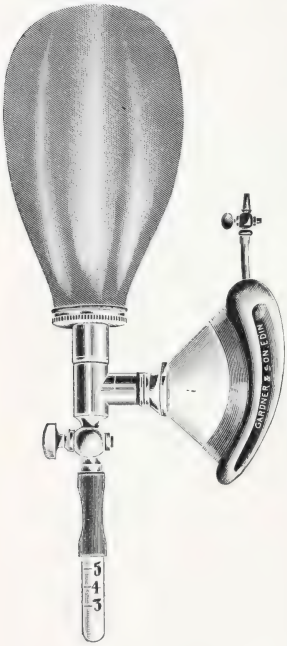



FIG. 53.—Ethyl Chloride Inhaler.

Ethyl chloride given by itself should in the author's view always be administered to a patient in the recumbent position. A dose sufficient to produce anæsthesia without the aid of nitrous oxide or ether will not be safe in the erect posture. The case is quite different where a small dose only is given, to assist the action of nitrous oxide, or facilitate the induction stage of ether. Some authorities do not find observance of this rule necessary.

## Signs of Anæsthesia.

Ethyl chloride is very rapid in its action, some sixty seconds availing to produce quite a deep anæsthesia. *Respiration* is at first deepened and quickened: as full anæsthesia is attained it remains rather deeper than normal, and is accompanied usually by light snoring. The colour should remain perfectly good: the pupils show marked dilatation, the corneal reflex is abolished, and good muscular relaxation is attained.

With no anæsthetic is it so essential as with this, to become acquainted with the type of respiration normally to be expected, and to watch for any departure therefrom with cat-like vigilance. The other danger signal is the pupil. It should be dilated, but not excessively.

Once anæsthesia is established, the inhaler should be removed, and the surgeon may begin his work. He will have for its completion some 80-90 seconds against the 40-50 available after nitrous oxide. With ethyl chloride there is a somewhat prolonged "analgesic" stage. The

patient is partly conscious and may even be phonating, but seems unconscious of the infliction of pain unless very severe measures are being used

## The Scope of Ethyl Chloride.

When first introduced, it was expected by enthusiasts that the lightness and portability of the drug itself and of the necessary inhaler, would enable ethyl chloride to oust nitrous oxide from its recognised place in surgery and dentistry. These high expectations have for several reasons not been fulfilled. In the first place, this drug is essentially a "single dose" anæsthetic. Most authorities view coldly all attempts to prolong anæsthesia by repeated or continued administration. Secondly, ethyl chloride has a mortality rate very much greater than nitrous oxide if doses sufficient in themselves to produce anæsthesia are habitually used (*vide supra*). The introduction of Gibbs' "vapour" method has done much to mitigate the risks, but even then, this anæsthetic cannot approach the high level of safety rightly credited to $N_2O$. Moreover, it leads to after vomiting much more commonly than its rival.

In many schools these considerations have been held so powerful that ethyl chloride has been entirely abandoned. It is, however, a very valuable drug for the following purposes :—

(1) The removal of tonsils and adenoids. For this operation, the speed with which the patient (usually a child) loses consciousness, the pleasant type of

anæsthesia and absence of all serious asphyxial phenomena, and the rapid re-appearance of the cough reflex when once the inhaler is removed, are all strong recommendations.

(2) As an adjuvant to gas, or gas oxygen (*see* Chapter XIII.).

(3) As a help to the speedy and comfortable induction of "closed-ether" (*see* Chapter XV.).

CHAPTER XIII.

# MIXTURES OF NITROUS OXIDE AND ETHYL CHLORIDE.

Dr Guy, Dean of the Edinburgh Dental School, introduced some years ago a method of giving ethyl chloride in mixture with nitrous oxide. Guy's objective was to utilise the many excellent features of the drug without incurring the risks which are apparently inherent in it when a dose sufficient in itself to induce full narcosis is used. Given in mixture with gas, a much smaller dose suffices.

Fig. 54.—Guy's inhaler for $N_2O$ and Ethyl Chloride.

His original apparatus is shown in Fig. 54; the details are shown in Fig. 55. The horizontal limb of a 3-way gas tap is prolonged half an inch. In each side of the prolongation is a hole. The bag mount has in its side also one hole, which is connected by a universal ball and socket joint, with the rubber tube to which the ethyl chloride vial is attached. An indicator on the outside of the bag mount and a mark upon the outside of the horizontal limb of the 3-way tap, serve by their

apposition or the reverse to show whether the ethyl chloride vial is in direct continuity with the interior of the inhaler. For purposes of description, Dr Guy calls these two positions, "in register" and "out of register."

To use the instrument, the ethyl chloride vial is removed, and the side pipe attached to a cylinder of nitrous oxide. The indicator of the 3-way tap is put at "air"

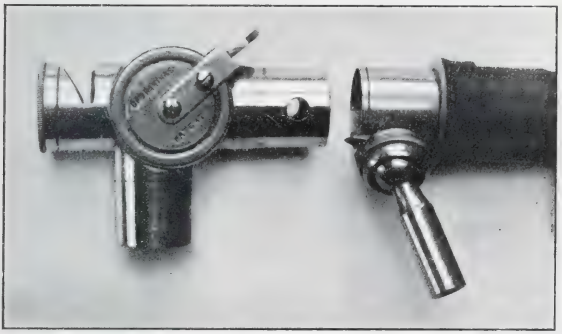


FIG. 55.—Guy's Instrument for Gas and Ethyl Chloride. Details of valve piece and bag mount, showing side tube for attachment of Ethyl Chloride vial.

and the bag mount "in register." The bag is then filled with gas by opening the head of the cylinder. The bag mount is now put "out of register," and the side tube disconnected with the cylinder. The bag, being closed, remains full of gas.

A suitable dose of ethyl chloride is now squirted into the vial. To an adult, Dr Guy gives 3 c.c. : on no account is this dose exceeded : children take $1\frac{1}{2}$-2 c.c.—even

adults often get less than 3 c.c. The vial is now attached to the side tube again, and the inhaler is ready for use.

After application of the mask to the face, the 3-way tap is at once pushed over to "no valves" and the patient rebreathes the gas in and out of the bag for some six or eight respirations. The bag mount is now turned round into "register," and the ethyl chloride tipped into the bag. In a further twenty-five seconds the mask may be removed and the operation begun.

The available period of anæsthesia is eighty to ninety seconds, counting from the instant of the removal of the inhaler.

This method was in use for some years at the Dental Hospital of Edinburgh; no instance of danger to life was ever seen. With so small a dose of ethyl chloride, the erect position necessary for the purposes of dentistry is perfectly safe.

This inhaler, of course, will serve admirably for giving ethyl chloride without gas, and the author habitually uses it for giving the drug by the "vapour" method.

In 1911, Dr Guy and the present author modified the method so as to permit the use of oxygen with the nitrous oxide. The inhaler which they then introduced serves also for nitrous oxide and oxygen, unaided by ethyl chloride, and the author has by its means given gas-oxygen to a considerable number of major surgical cases. He now uses a sight-feed or a Clarke apparatus for long cases, but has found no reason to abandon or even modify the method and apparatus as first published by Dr Guy

and himself in so far as dental and short surgical work is concerned.

In Fig. 56 will be found a diagram showing the method by which the oxygen is introduced. The 1-gallon oxygen bag is either attached directly to a cylinder, or suspended on an upright as shown in Fig. 57. In either case, the bag is, before the administration, moderately filled with

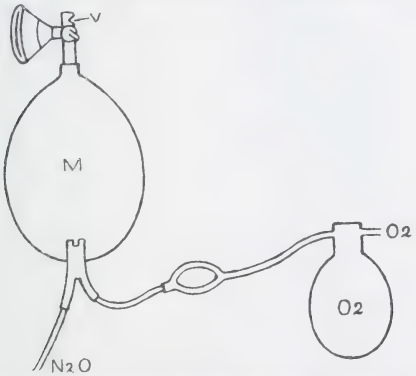
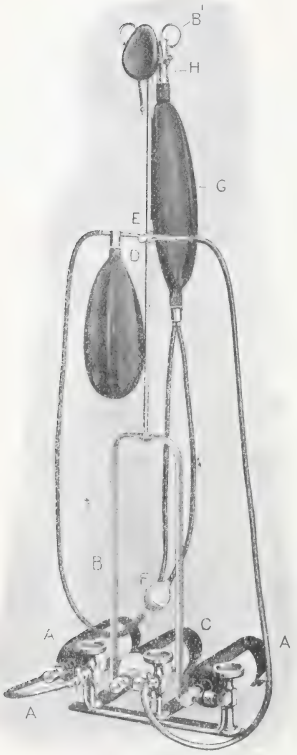



Fig. 56.—Diagram of the method introduced by Dr Guy and the author for giving Nitrous Oxide and Oxygen, with or without Ethyl Chloride.

oxygen: one bagful will suffice for a short anæsthesia, and the supply of the oxygen from the cylinder is therefore turned off at once. For long cases, of course, a small trickle of oxygen into the bag is required to replace the gas used.

In the outlet pipe from the oxygen bag is placed a ball syringe of 2 ounces capacity. A valve in the pipe obliges the flow of oxygen to take place in one direction




DESCRIPTION OF THE APPARATUS.

AA—Two 100-gal. Cylinders of Nitrous Oxide.

BB—Metal Upright and Crutch, riveted to Gas-Stand.

C—30-gal. Cylinder of Oxygen.

D—1-gal. Oxygen Bag.

E—Arm supporting the Oxygen Bag, which by a sliding attachment can be fixed at the most convenient height for the Administrator.

F—2-oz. Bulb or Pump, each compression of which sends forward a charge of Oxygen from the Oxygen Bag D to the Gas Bag G.

H—Bag Mount, three-way Tap, and Ethyl Chloride Attachment.

Y—The Y Tube for admission of the gases.

FIG. 57.—The Guy-Ross Nitrous-Oxide and Oxygen Apparatus for use with or without Ethyl Chloride.

only when the bulb is squeezed, viz. from oxygen bag to inhaler.

The remainder of the apparatus is identical with Guy's original inhaler, except that the bag is of 2-gallon capacity, and is perforated at its base by a Y-tube, one limb of the fork bringing in the nitrous oxide, the other the oxygen.

## Method of Use.

A few breaths of pure nitrous oxide gas are usually allowed "on the valves." Rebreathing is then instituted, and the addition of oxygen begun. The amount required to each type of patient can only be learnt with experience, but the average is one full compression of the bulb every ten seconds. If anæsthesia is not complete at the end of one minute, put the indicator to "valves" again, and allow the patient nearly to empty the bag. Then push back the indicator to "no valves," and refill the bag with nitrous oxide by opening the cylinder with the foot key. Some four to six compressions of the bulb are made while the nitrous oxide is running in. The time will now have come to add the dose of ethyl chloride if it be judged necessary at all. This will have been placed in the vial before the administration is begun. After emptying the ethyl chloride into the bag of the inhaler, anæsthesia should be complete in twenty-five seconds.

The same small doses of ethyl chloride are used as is the case with Guy's original method.

After a little practice under supervision, students at the Dental Hospital learn to use this method safely and well. No example of risk to life has arisen after eleven years' daily experience.

CHAPTER XIV.

# MIXTURE OF CHLOROFORM AND ETHER.

THE mere addition of ether does not remove all the undesirable features of chloroform anæsthesia. A heart poisoned by excess of $CHCl_3$ does not respond to ether stimulation. Nevertheless, CE mixtures of varying proportions have great value. The less lethal drug takes on part of the work of the more dangerous one; it also keeps the respiratory centre active. Viewing mixtures as dilute chloroform, it is also obvious that there will be with them a greater margin of error in dosage, than with the pure drug.

Some chemical change takes place when the two drugs are mixed, for heat is evolved; of the nature of this change we are ignorant.

The first mixture introduced was known as ACE, and consisted of one part absolute alcohol, two parts chloroform, and three parts ether. Alcohol evaporates very slowly and if it be introduced at all it should be in much smaller proportion. Schäfer's mixture is one part alcohol to nine parts chloroform. Neither of these mixtures is now much used. The most useful combina-

tion is two parts chloroform and three parts ether, and is known as $C_2E_3$. In special cases, one part of chloroform to two parts ether may be better.

## Methods.

*Cones* of varying type were at first extensively used for mixtures. The best known is Rendle's. It is made of celluloid, and is perforated at the top by a series of small holes through which the anæsthetic is introduced. A sponge is packed into the upper part of the cone, and a flannelette cover completes the appliance. The objection to the use of this and kindred cones is that since chloroform evaporates more slowly than ether, the more dangerous drug is apt to collect in the sponge, completely altering the strength of the vapour after a time. This fault is remedied to a large extent by the open drop method now used.

## The Open (Drop) Method.

For this the mask and ether dropper of Bellamy Gardner are admirably suited (Fig. 33). As regards material, one layer of flannelette does very well, or the cheap cotton towels which used to be known in Edinburgh as "penny towels" in the pre-war period. The mask should fit the face with reasonable accuracy: there is no reason why a gauze ring should not be used to ensure this if the administrator is careful to adhere strictly to a "drop" method.

The bottle into which the dropper is inserted should be of different *colour* to those in which pure ether is habitually carried. This is a greater safeguard against a dangerous forgetfulness than a mere label.

As already said, the anæsthetic must be given by a strict "drop" method. "Douching" at frequent intervals gives results far inferior.

The Type of Anæsthesia is a compromise between that of chloroform and open-ether. Respirations and colour are better than with pure chloroform, not so good as with open-ether. The size of the pupil is also intermediate.

Scope.—As elsewhere explained there are many patients to whom open-ether cannot well be given; the greatest number of these can take a mixture perfectly, and C.E. should certainly be chosen in preference to pure chloroform when possible. For refractory cases, it serves admirably as the inducing agent before the use of open-ether.

CHAPTER XV.

# SEQUENCES.

By a sequence we mean a method in which anæsthesia is partially or wholly induced by one anæsthetic or one method, and maintained by another. The methods mentioned in Chapter XIII. as devised by Dr Guy for dental purposes are examples which have already been sufficiently described.

## C.E. Mixture—Ether Sequence.

Of the method of inducing anæsthesia by *C.E.*, and turning later to *open-ether*, we have also already spoken. One thing remains to be said in this connection. Learn to judge the appearance of the type of patient who will require this alternative to open-ether induction, and use the sequence to such patients from the beginning. Don't start off with open-ether, and find out in a few minutes that the patient is too obstreperous. A change from mixture to ether is harmless; the reverse process needs much care.

The sequence of *C.E. to closed-ether* was advocated by Hewitt as a means of dealing with very alcoholic men, and for this purpose has great merits. The mixture is

given until the stage of struggling is just about to commence, a point which experience enables one to fix with considerable accuracy. The remainder of the induction is conducted by a closed-ether inhaler, either the Hewitt wide-bore or preferably the Ormsby. The ether indicator which stands at about "one" when the inhaler is first applied, may be advanced very rapidly, full ether strength being attained within a minute or two. As soon as rebreathing is begun with either of these instruments, it is very striking to watch the rapid and apparently safe subsidence into anæsthesia of the most troublesome patient. The struggling is cut short and greatly minimised in violence, and a stage which under $CHCl_3$ might have presented some considerable risk of secondary syncope, is thus eliminated.

## Nitrous Oxide and Ether Sequences.

This is a method greatly superior to the induction by closed-ether described on p. 121. Instead of the 1-gallon bag of the Clover or Hewitt instrument, the valve piece and 2-gallon bag of a gas apparatus are attached to the head of the ether inhaler (Fig. 29, on page 118).

Once the gas bag is inflated from the cylinder, the supply of gas may be cut off. A few breaths of gas "upon the valves" are given, until the bag is half empty; the valve tap is then pushed over to "no valves" and rebreathing begun. Ether may be turned on a few seconds later, and the strength of the vapour may be increased more rapidly. Three-quarter strength of ether may be

attained as a rule in ninety seconds. There is very little likelihood of struggling in this method.

## Ethyl Chloride and Ether.

This is a valuable method for short operations, being easily portable, speedy and safe in action, and fairly agreeable to the patient. Some anæsthetists use this induction method as a prelude to open-ether.

The Clover (or Hewitt wide-bore) instrument is inter-

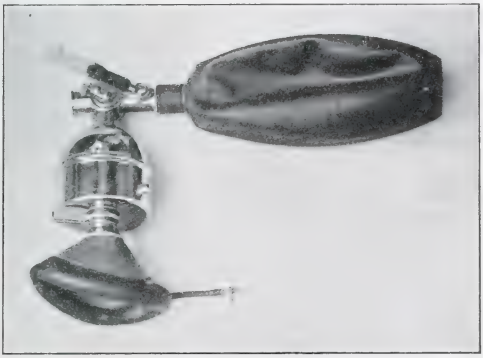


Fig. 58.—Clover's Inhaler adapted for the Ethyl Chloride-Ether sequence.

posed between the facepiece and the T. of the ethyl chloride inhaler, as shown in Fig. 58. A small dose of ethyl chloride only is requisite; for an adult, 3 c.c. is enough. This is vapourised over hot water in the usual way; a very light anæsthesia is induced in some sixty

seconds, and the ether can then be turned on at a much quicker rate than if the induction be conducted by that drug alone.

The gas-ether and ethyl chloride-ether sequences are most useful methods. They are quick, safe, and powerful.

Either may be used as "single dose" anæsthetic, the ether being pushed quickly up to "full" and the inhaler then withdrawn. If, however, no access to the mouth is required by the surgeon, ether anæsthesia may, by occasional breaths of fresh air, be prolonged for as long as desired.

CHAPTER XVI.

# THE ACCIDENTS OF ANÆSTHESIA.

The minor difficulties of anæsthesia have already been dealt with, and if the instructions already given, particularly in Chapter III., are faithfully carried out, incidents of real danger will rarely occur. The soundest knowledge and the most conscientious care will, however, never entirely rid anæsthesia of an element of danger to life. The conditions now to be considered are :—

(*A*) Vomiting.
(*B*) Failure of respiration.
(*C*) Failure of circulation.

## (A) Vomiting.

This always exposes an unconscious patient to the danger of inhaling solid or fluid material into the larynx, with resulting asphyxia. If the patient be tided through that immediate difficulty, he is liable to develop an inhalational pneumonia subsequently.

A healthy patient properly prepared should not vomit during the induction stage, nor during the progress of the operation. If he does, it means that the induction has been too slow, or that the administration has been

intermittent, and the patient has been permitted to come to too light a level of anæsthesia during the operation.

During emergency operations where the patient's stomach may be full of food, the case is different. Such patients commonly vomit early in the induction stage, and no skill can avert the incident.

A patient suffering from intestinal obstruction, or from generalised peritonitis has his stomach and intestines full of highly infective fluid. Reverse peristalsis may set in merely as the result of the inhalation, or later from handling the contents of the abdomen, and the feculent fluid gushes up the œsophagus with little or no warning. Since vomiting in these cases may occur even in deep anæsthesia, when the cough reflex which is the normal sentry to the entrance of the larynx, is abolished, the dangers of insufflation are very real indeed. Personally, the author prefers to wash out the stomach before beginning to induce anæsthesia in these cases, but some surgeons believe that the shock of this procedure outweighs the advantages.

### Symptoms and Treatment of Vomiting.

In ordinary cases, vomiting is usually heralded by a definite train of symptoms. Respiration becomes shallow, the colour a little pale and the pulse rather small. The pupil dilates, but remains active to light, indicating that the alteration of respiration and circulation is not due to overdose.

At the first appearance of such symptoms, a brisk

rub of the lips and thereafter an increase of the vapour strength of the anæsthetic will often avert the impending vomiting by deepening the anæsthesia, but if the possibility of this complication has occurred to the anæsthetist too late for its prevention, the head must be turned well to one side, and the other shoulder slightly elevated by a pillow, so that vomited material will fall out of the mouth at once. When the actual act of vomiting is over, no time must be lost in mopping out the mouth and pressing on with the production of a deeper anæsthesia.

## (B) Respiratory Dangers.

These divide themselves into two groups :—

(1) MECHANICAL.—The respiratory movements continue, but the ingress and egress of air is blocked. As already explained on page 29, the respiratory movements may cease quite soon even though the original trouble was a mechanical block. This persistence depends upon the continuance of activity in the respiratory centre, which usually responds to the stimulus of gathering $CO_2$ but will fail to do so if too deeply anæsthetised.

*The symptoms and preventive treatment* have been referred to at some length in Chapter III., and no further account of these is therefore necessary. *The treatment of a complete blockage* of the air passages which resist the measure there described, alone remain to be mentioned. Of these, the only two effective are *artificial respiration and tracheotomy* (or laryngotomy if preferred by the surgeon). Forcible artificial respiration by the Sylvester

method, with the mouth gagged open and the tongue held forward by the tongue forceps, is frequently successful in getting over even a complete block, but the last resort of opening the air passage by the knife must not be delayed until too late. In deciding such a point, considerable judgment is of course called for.

(2) Non-mechanical.—Respiratory arrest.

This is usually seen in conjunction with a serious failure of the circulation caused by over-dosage. Exceptionally, some act of the surgeon sets up a reflex inhibition of the respiratory centre; the circulation is at the same time depressed, but to a varying degree. The cardinal *symptom* is arrest of all respiratory effort. The *treatment* is best dealt with under the heading of circulatory failure.

The student is also here reminded of what has previously been said as to the rapidity with which the respiratory centre succumbs to serious anoxæmia.

## (C) Circulatory Failure or Syncope.

By the term syncope, we mean a more or less sudden failure of the cardiac pump, as opposed to the form of circulatory failure seen in surgical shock, where the condition arises gradually, and is not cardiac in origin (*see* Chapter II.)

Syncope occurs under varying conditions which may for descriptive purposes be divided into four classes. It

is not, however, always possible to decide with certainty into which class an individual case should be placed.

The *symptoms* common to all classes of syncope are :—

(1) Pallor, and loss of all tone in the muscles, noticeably those of expression. The pulse is weak or imperceptible.

(2) Cessation of respiration.

(3) Dilatation of the pupil, which ceases to react to light.

The four classes above mentioned are as follows : –

### A. Primary Syncope.

This is peculiar to chloroform. With no other anæsthetic is it seen, at any rate in the healthy subject. It arises during the induction period, and is not necessarily preceded by any respiratory difficulty. There is one big inspiratory gasp, sudden and extreme pallor, and the pupil goes out to the rim in a few seconds. The only reasonable explanation of such an incident is the occurrence of vagal inhibition (*see* page 166). Its prevention therefore is a matter of the avoidance of a high percentage of chloroform.

### B. Secondary Syncope.

This term is applied to a collapse arising as a secondary result of embarrassed respiration. Though not peculiar to chloroform, it is far more common with that drug than with any other. The most common time for the accident is towards the end of the induction period. The patient has probably been struggling, has clenched the jaws,

and developed "mechanical" asphyxia. Violent inspiratory efforts are still being made, and considerable cyanosis develops. Either at the very moment when the respiratory difficulty is overcome, or while it still persists, the colour suddenly alters from blue to white, and the other symptoms of syncope rapidly appear. The exact period required to transform a blue struggling patient with heaving chest, into one with pallid face, and motionless chest and limbs, varies greatly, for reasons furnished below.

The most reasonable explanation offered of such an accident is that given by Leonard Hill. The attempts to inspire through an air way mechanically blocked cause an immense strain upon the heart muscle. The flow of blood in the lung capillary is hindered, and the right side of the heart becomes over distended with blood. Its musculature is further damaged by the fact that the blood in the coronary vessels is deficient in oxygen, and that a considerable dose of anæsthetic has already been absorbed. There is the further fact, not mentioned by Hill, that during the whole period of asphyxia the peripheral resistance is rising from vaso-constriction. Under circumstances such as these, it is obvious that *any* heart must ultimately succumb, *no matter what anæsthetic is in use*. It is also obvious that with chloroform and ethyl chloride, which are themselves heart poisons, secondary syncope will happen much more readily than with ether or nitrous oxide, which are not; and that a heart with diseased musculature will fail quicker than a healthy organ.

Secondary syncope is almost certainly the commonest fatal accident of anæsthesia. The reason why this fact is not more widely recognised arises from the natural instinct of any one who has suffered the misery and ignominy of causing a death under an anæsthetic, to attribute it to some cause beyond human control. The *essential* cause of secondary syncope is failure to maintain a free air way, which cannot be styled unavoidable. Two consolations may, however, honestly be offered to the person who has acted as anæsthetist in a case of secondary syncope. Firstly, it is in certain types of cases, very difficult indeed to maintain a free air way ; and secondly, a heart with muscle degenerated from fatty or other changes, may give out after very little respiratory embarrassment.

### Syncope from Overdose.

This is a more gradual affair than the two foregoing ; and has been sufficiently dealt with in the chapter devoted to the Stages of Anæsthesia (*see* p. 56).

### C. Reflex Syncope.

Exceptionally, a patient not overdosed with anæsthetic, and not suffering from any mechanical obstruction to respiration, has a sudden attack of syncope during the progress of the operation. We here exclude patients who are suffering from surgical shock ; the condition arises too rapidly for such an explanation to be accepted. Much speculation has been expended upon these cases.

One view is that some procedure of the surgeon has set up a reflex inhibition of the heart through the vagus; another, that the reflex has taken the form of sudden vasomotor paresis. Levy * ascribes the condition to cardiac fibrillation, and agrees with the older surgeons who stoutly maintained that reflex syncope could not arise if the patient were properly under, and that it was in the practice of those anæsthetists who were afraid of pushing the anæsthetic sufficiently, that such accidents occurred. The author's own belief is that a *very* light chloroform anæsthesia does pre-dispose to this accident, but that it may occur also at a deep, the very deepest possible level. With an anæsthetic other than chloroform, it is extremely rare; one case, however, occurring under closed-ether was privately reported to the author.

## Treatment of Syncope.

This must be speedy to be of any avail. The following are the points upon which to concentrate :—

(1) *Withdraw the anæsthetic.*

(2) Make sure that the *air way is free.*

(3) Begin *artificial respiration* by Sylvester's method, the movement of *expiration* being first performed (*see* Fig. 59).

(4) *Lowering of the head and shoulders* is usually to be recommended. It is best done by tilting the whole table as if for the Trendelenberg position.

* Levy does not accept vagal inhibition as the explanation of any sudden chloroform syncoped, nor does he seem to attribute as much importance as do most other authorities, to obstracted respiration as a cause of secondary syncope.

The lowering of the head attracts more blood to the carotid artery and raises the blood-pressure of the main vessel and its cerebral branches (*see* Fig. 48). It must, however, be remembered that it will also tend to empty the blood in the veins of the lower extremities and abdomen into the right side of the heart, and cases in which marked cyanosis

FIG. 59A.—Artificial respiration by Sylvester's method. Expiration

has preceded pallor, are probably suffering already from engorgement and dilatation of the right heart. The tilting of the table should in such cases be very moderate in degree, and should not be persisted in if it seems to do no good. In no case, indeed, should the tilting be extreme. An angle of more than 15 or 20 degrees is as likely to do harm as good.

(5) Hot cloths may be placed over the precordial region, care being taken not to burn the skin.

(6) The only *drugs* likely to be of any avail are atropine and strychnine, the former being used with the idea of paralysing the terminations of the vagus in the heart muscle, the latter as a cardiac tonic and

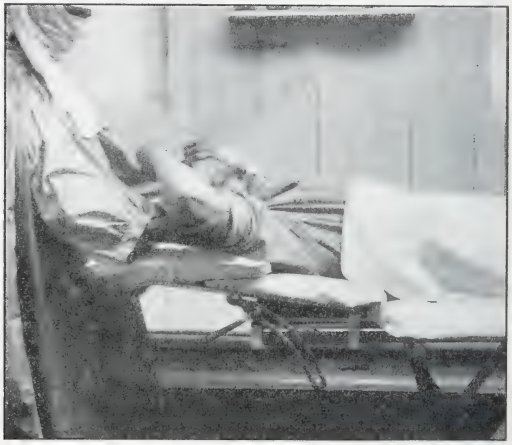


FIG. 508.—Artificial respiration by Sylvester's method. Inspiration.

a stimulant to the respiratory centre. Some authorities have recommended the injection of atropine by a long needle passed into the heart muscle, but most are content to give either or both drugs hypodermically. Really to paralyse the vagus, a very large dose of atropine is required—about 1/30 gr. Strychnine should be given in a dose of 1/40–1/30 gr.

(7) In cases where the right heart has certainly been over-distended, the expedient of venesection has been tried. Some six ounces may be withdrawn from the external jugular or one of the veins of the arm.

(8) As a last resort, *the heart may be massaged.* The most practicable route is to open the abdomen (if not already done), pass one hand under the left side of the vault of the diaphragm, placing the other hand over the precordial region. Bost and Neve go a stage further, and incise the diaphragm close to its costal attachment so as to permit the hand to pass into the chest and grasp the heart outside the pericardium. Between the two hands, the heart can first be thoroughly compressed to empty its presumably flaccid and over-distended cavities, and then lightly massaged. Several cases of recovery under this measure are on record. Throughout the period of massage, artificial respiration must be maintained as it is of little value to propel by manipulation, highly venous blood through the coronary vessels. An excellent means to maintain aëration of the lungs is to pass the catheter of the intratracheal apparatus, and propel down it a stream of oxygen at a low pressure. Levy emphasises that if a fair chance is to be given to cardiac massage, it must be given before the central nervous system has been hopelessly damaged by the continued anoxæmia necessarily associated with stasis of the circulation. However perfectly the aëration of the alveoli is maintained by artificial means, the central

nervous system must starve for oxygen if the circulation has ceased, and the resisting powers of nerve cells to this state of affairs will not hold out for long.

## Status Lymphaticus.

Before leaving the subject of accidents it may be well to allude to this condition, which is also known as status thymicus, and as lymphatism.

It is met with mostly in the young, the commonest ages probably being five to fifteen years. Certain pathological conditions have been found in fatal cases, of which the most important are an enlargement of the thymus gland, of various lymph glands, and of the tonsils, including the naso-pharyngeal tonsil (adenoids). The heart muscle is frequently degenerated. Of the cause of these abnormalities we are as yet in doubt. There is some reason to believe that the condition tends to disappear with advancing years, if the subject survive.

The most outstanding clinical fact in connection with the disease is its tendency to cause sudden death on very little provocation. A fright, a sudden exertion, and above all an anæsthetic may cause sudden and fatal syncope.

### Diagnosis.

Suspicion that the disease is present may be aroused in several ways. The presence of enlarged tonsils and adenoids, combined with general enlargement of lymph glands from no obvious cause, and a tendency to faint,

make a very suggestive picture. "Night-crowing" (a sudden attack of larnygeal spasm, occurring at night, and often repeated at intervals) also raises grave doubt. The diagnosis can only be established with certainty by an X-ray photograph, when the great enlargement of the thymus may be seen in the upper part of the chest.

### Anæsthetics in Status Lymphaticus.

Too frequently the condition has never been suspected, and a fatality occurs from sudden syncope, usually during the induction period, but occasionally during the progress of the operation. It would, however, be fallacious to suppose that an anæsthetic is necessarily fatal even to an undoubted case. If the drug (preferably ether) be given with great care, and the operation done carefully at a level of anæsthesia neither too light nor too deep, there is every reason to believe that the danger can be, and often is, successfully averted.

At the same time, it must be understood that in a known case, operation should always be avoided or deferred if possible.

CHAPTER XVII.

# THE SEQUELÆ OF ANÆSTHESIA.

## Respiratory System.

After operations performed under any form of anæsthesia, even spinal, there is always a possibility of pneumonia or bronchitis. The anæsthetic itself is not always to blame. The patient has suffered trauma and is confined to bed, and may develop a hypostatic pneumonia just as a person who has suffered from a fractured thigh so commonly does, even though he has had no anæsthetic at all.

It is probable that organisms, capable under certain circumstances of causing inflammatory disease of the respiratory tract, are present in a large proportion of apparently healthy people. Pneumococci and streptococci of varying strains may be grown from nasal or pharyngeal secretions of patients who suffer from catarrh of these regions, and may reappear upon slight provocation even when prolonged treatment had apparently banished them permanently. All that is required to start an acute infection of lungs or bronchi, is some factor that depresses vitality and lowers body resistance to the organism, and it has long been recognised that such a factor is inevitably furnished by a surgical operation under whatever form of anæsthesia it may be performed.

The whole subject was exhaustively reviewed in the Anæsthetic Section of the annual meeting of the British Medical Association in 1922.* Founding largely upon that discussion and also upon other sources of information, we may summarise the present day opinion on the subject as follows :—

1. The post-operative morbidity rate in respect of acute inflammatory disease of the respiratory tract is broadly 4 per cent. if estimated in a long series of unselected cases. The death rate is difficult to fix with accuracy. It is certainly small, perhaps about ·2 per cent.

2. The greatest factor at issue in any individual case is the nature of the operation. In abdominal section cases, particularly where the incision is placed high up, there is a tendency to post-operative paresis of the diaphragm, respiration being carried out largely by the action of the upper part of the chest only. A basal pneumonia is thus not unlikely.

3. Ether is an irritant to the respiratory tract, and bronchitis is perhaps more common after its use than after that of chloroform. The contention of the older authorities that ether was the sole or even the greatest *cause* of post-operative bronchitis, and that the use of chloroform is therefore obligatory to prevent its occurrence is however no longer tenable.

4. Exposure to chill before, during, or after operation greatly increases the patient's risk.

* The author desires to express his indebtedness for the information rendered available in the opening paper in this discussion by Dr D. Lamb, of Glasgow.

5. Respiratory sequelæ are more common in the winter than in the summer.

6. The presence in the mouth or throat of active infection (*e.g.* an acute naso-pharyngitis, a septic condition of the teeth or gums, a foul malignant ulcer on the tongue) constitutes a great danger, particularly if the operation itself be in the mouth, the septic infection being very likely to be inhaled into the lung and to cause trouble afterwards.

7. Excessive smoking, particularly of cigarettes, adds to the risk of respiratory sequelæ.

For the prevention of post-anæsthetic pneumonia, the author offers the following tentative suggestions :—

(1) See that the skin is kept covered up as much as possible during the operation and that the patient is not exposed to draughts during or after it. Rooms can, and should be, well ventilated without cold draughts.

(2) If a patient has an acute or sub-acute naso-pharyngeal catarrh or other source of infection in the mouth, treat it as fully as possible before operation by sprays and gargles. It may even be wise to immunise the patient by an autogenous vaccine.

(3) Do not use ether to patients who suffer or recently have suffered from such conditions.

(4) Give a hypodermic of morphia and atropine before operation as a routine.

(5) In so far as possible, let the patient's shoulders and head be raised by pillows during the early hours of convalescence.

(6) Lastly, remember that while no care will absolutely banish these dangerous sequelæ from our practice, the greater care and skill shown by the anæsthetist, the less bronchitis and pneumonia will appear among his patients. As regards ether, the author believes that it is the strength of vapour used, more than the duration of the anæsthesia, which counts. It is for that, among other reasons, that he has for the induction period, no hesitation in recommending a method whereby a small part of the requisite ether strength is replaced by chloroform.

## Vomiting.

The amount of vomiting which is to be regarded as normal after the patient has been returned to bed is difficult to express statistically, for what one observer would call severe vomiting, would be styled by another "a little sickness." Dr G. F. R. Smith of Liverpool has recently given some figures. Working in a special hospital devoted to women's diseases only, he found that of 441 cases, no less than 359 were not sick at all. Of the remaining 91, 52 only brought up a little mucus once or twice directly after return to bed, 17 vomited several times, but were comfortable within six hours of operation, and 32 continued to vomit for periods varying from ten hours to three days. The same observer also published figures drawn from a general hospital where the patients would be of both sexes, and where many of the anæsthetics were given by students. Here the total vomiting rate was twice as high as in the other series.

Of all anæsthetics, nitrous oxide and oxygen gives, so far as can be ascertained, the least trouble as regards after-vomiting, but the author met with one case who had asked for the method as he had had so much trouble in this respect with a previous etherisation, and who was after his gas-oxygen very sick indeed for twenty-four hours. It must be remarked that the administration had lasted over an hour and a half, but the operation had not been severe in itself. This must however be regarded as quite exceptional; in the main very little vomiting is caused by gas-oxygen.

As between chloroform and the various methods of administering ether, it is hardly possible to lay down definite rules as to which causes the least after-vomiting. Much, indeed probably most, depends upon the skill of the administrator and the care which he exercises to minimise the amounts given, but in the hands of most administrators of average skill, it will be found that open-ether preceded by a small dose of narcotic will give the best results.

When vomiting is prolonged for twenty-four hours, or indeed for twelve hours in some cases, the question must always arise as to whether the cause is indeed purely anæsthetic, or whether some surgical condition may not be present. Gastric and intestinal stasis is always a possibility after abdominal section, and must be taken into account when considering a case. Discussion of the differential diagnosis would take us too far outside our subject

### Prevention and Treatment.

The adoption of open-ether or nitrous oxide and oxygen preceded by morphia and atropine and due skill and thought on the part of the anæsthetist, combined with proper preparation of the patient, are the only means of prevention at our command. For some further remarks upon this subject, the student is referred back to page 69, where Gwathmey's views upon Synergistic Analgesia are given.

The raised position of the head and shoulders during the recovery stage undoubtedly tends to reduce the nuisance. It is a vexed question whether to give or to withhold fluids after operation and this matter is of course in the hands of the surgeon, not the anæsthetist. In certain cases, the author believes that it is worth while trying the effect of a cup of fresh tea with very little sugar or milk. Even if rejected in a few moments, the astringent effect of the infusion seems to soothe the gastric mucous membrane, and give relief.

## Post-operative Acidosis.

(Synonym—Delayed Chloroform Poisoning.)

In a limited number of cases, post-operative emesis assumes a grave type, and definitely threatens life. Such cases began to be studied in the early part of this century, and though our knowledge of the condition is still incomplete, the student should be acquainted with the present views held upon the subject.

Clinically, the earliest symptom to raise suspicion, is

the re-appearance of vomiting at a time when one would expect such trouble to have abated, usually twenty-four or thirty-six hours after operation. Within a few hours, the nature of the vomit changes from the usual bilious stomach contents, and shows obvious evidence of the presence of *altered blood*. The pulse and temperature begin to rise, the countenance assumes an anxious look. A trace of jaundice is usually present. The nervous system becomes affected as shown first in restlessness, and later, delirium. Every degree of this condition is possible, but a very large proportion of recognisable cases pass into coma, and death supervenes within a few days, sometimes less.

Investigation into such cases has shown that the essential underlying condition is an acidosis closely allied to that seen in diabetic coma. The breath has the peculiar sweetish aroma of acetone, and acetone diacetic acid, and B. oxybutyric acid successively appear in the urine.

Post-mortem, the most striking change found is a profound fatty degeneration of the liver, the cells of which are disentegrated as in acute yellow atrophy.

It is obvious from the foregoing that there is present a very remarkable abnormality of metabolism. Mr Rendle Short, in his admirable book, *The New Physiology in Surgical and General Practice*, gives the following explanation of the condition :—*

"The physiological process of dealing with fat is to resolve it into carbon dioxide and water. If we make a

* In his last edition Mr Short has altered the wording but not the sense of the remarks quoted.

pound of fat into tallow candles and burn it, we shall obtain carbon dioxide and water, and a certain amount of heat will be evolved. If the pound of fat is eaten and absorbed by a man or an animal, it will be burnt to the same end products, and the same amount of heat will be given out. But in certain circumstances, an abnormal mode of breaking down is followed, and there are produced, first B. oxybutyric acid, then diacetic acid, and finally acetone. If this takes place on a large scale, the conversion into acetone fails to keep pace with the production of acids. Therefore first acetone appears in the urine, then diacetic acid, and finally oxybutyric acid; the last may rise rapidly to an enormous figure: 30, 50, or even 180 grams may be passed daily."

Later in the same chapter, Short propounds the question as to what are the special circumstances in which the breaking down of fat deviates from its normal course, and follows this dangerous route. The answer is, he says, quite definite and decisive. When the tissues are unable to obtain sugar from the blood, fat is broken down *via* these dangerous acids to acetone, instead of to carbon dioxide and water.

Such an inability on the part of the tissues to obtain sugar arises under several conditions: —

(*a*) In diabetes, where sugar though freely present in the blood cannot, for some reason still not clearly known, be assimilated by the tissues.

(*b*) In poisoning by salicylates.

(*c*) In starvation, for obvious reasons. The supply of sugar from the liver has been used up, and the

patient, living on his own fats, breaks them up abnormally.

(*d*) In post-anæsthetic poisoning, for reasons which are at present not clearly ascertained.

Upon the theoretical side it is therefore not possible to say more than that anæsthetics sometimes initiate this abnormal metabolic process. To the question as to why and how they do so, we can as yet give no certain answer. That the liver is the seat of very profound changes is beyond doubt, and we are probably not far wrong in taking the degree of such changes as the measure of the gravity of any particular case. Moreover it is clear that the same factors which increase the frequency and severity of acidosis are the very ones which have been shown to produce changes in the liver. For instance Desmarest and Lascombes in 1921 showed that both ether and chloroform produced marked cholæmia which took 5 to 6 days to disappear, while nitrous oxide and oxygen had no such effect, as this combination produced no damage in the liver cells. But it would probably be going too far to regard post-operative acidosis as a disease arising in and solely as a result of disease of, the liver.

Upon the practical side, we can, however, speak much more definitely. Acidosis follows the use of ether very rarely indeed : after nitrous oxide it is unknown. Chloroform has been the drug used in almost every recorded case, while ethyl chloride has been responsible in a few isolated instances. Young children are much more prone to suffer than adults, though the author had a fatal case in a lady well over forty years of age : he has

also seen a case very nearly fatal in a soldier aged twenty. This man was, a week after recovery from acidosis, anæsthetised for half-an-hour with nitrous oxide and oxygen, without exhibiting any signs of a return of his dangerous condition. Anæsthesia repeated in the same subject after a short interval is more prone to start the process than a first inhalation. Lastly, acute sepsis, particularly in the young, is notorious for its liability to be followed by acidosis.

### Prevention and Treatment.

The obvious moral of the foregoing is that chloroform should not be administered to patients suffering from acute sepsis, particularly if they be very young. Indeed, so common is a mild degree of acidosis among children, some surgeons consider there is a definite risk in giving chloroform to them at all unless special precautions are taken. Chief among these are regular dosage for a day or two before operation, with considerable doses of bicarbonate of soda and sugar, which is a routine measure in some hospitals (see page 65 and also Appendix III.).

As regards curative treatment, much can be done if the gravity of the condition is recognised early. The stomach is first washed out with alkalis, and a substantial dose (one dram) of bicarbonate of soda left in it. The same dose is repeated hourly by the mouth, if retained, or per rectum. A useful addition to the alkaline treatment is dextrose, also in teaspoonful doses. In grave cases, these drugs should be given intravenously in saline solution.

These measures combined with warmth, and ample fluids by mouth or rectum, will often save life, but to be of any value they must be begun early. Fulminating cases occur which succumb rapidly in spite of treatment.

### Insulin.

The introduction to medicine of this new pancreatic preparation will probably be found to have modified very profoundly the whole question of post-operative acidosis. In diabetic coma we have a condition certainly allied though probably not identical with the acidosis which may follow anæsthetics: there is the same inability on the part of the tissues to make use of the blood sugar, and the same development of acetone, diacetic and oxybutyric acids. In cases now carefully studied and recorded, Insulin has saved lives threatened by diabetic coma: the tissues recover their power to assimilate sugar; the sugar in the blood falls to normal, the acid bodies disappear, the coma is relieved. So far, no case of post-operative acidosis has been recorded as having been treated by Insulin, but there are obviously grounds for hope that the preparation might have in some examples of that condition the same effect as it has in diabetes. That every such case would yield to Insulin treatment, however timely and carefully given, is not so certain: Insulin treatment may be the means of showing that all cases of post-operative acidosis are not identical in their pathology.

CHAPTER XVIII.

# POSTURE OF THE PATIENT.

The position in which the patient is lying is of as much importance to the anæsthetist as to the surgeon. It is for the surgeon to say what he wants and for the anæsthetist to realise how his own work will be thereby affected.

## Dorsal Decubities.

This is the ordinary position and calls for no extended comment. The pillows must be so arranged that at no spot is the body acutely flexed or extended. Abdomen, thorax, neck, and head must all be roughly in a straight line.

Deep-chested subjects require a higher pillow than those with shallow chests, otherwise the neck is bent back and respiration obstructed.

The arms should either be folded and retained by a bandage or other device over the chest, or extended so that the hands can be slipped under the buttocks and retained there by the body weight. An arm which is allowed to hang over the side of the table is likely to show next day and for many months afterwards, the condition of drop-wrist from musculo-spiral paralysis, the nerve

having been compressed between the edge of the table and the humerus. One case has recently come to the author's notice where the ulnar nerve was similarly affected.

## Face-down Position.

This is an awkward position for the anæsthetist; there being a general tendency to respiratory embarrassment. Put a pillow under the upper part of the thorax, leaving the lower part and the abdomen as free as possible. Let the head project from the pillow, so that the face can be got at without undue rotation of the neck. The intratracheal method is a great help.

## Lateral Position.

This may be called for either with or without the addition of a sand-bag or inflatable air-pillow to push the loin upwards. In either case, there is a tendency for the upper shoulder to fall forwards, the position then assimilating itself to the face-down position. This is best met by a support fixed to the table, upon which the upper arm may be rested. Failing such a convenience, a sand-bag may be pushed in to keep up the shoulder, or the assistance of a nurse may be required.

## The Trendelenberg Position.

Slight tilting of the head end of the table downwards is often useful in assisting the return of bowel into the abdomen: in this position, the patient usually takes the

anæsthetic very well. It must not be assumed until the third stage of anæsthesia is reached.

For many gynæcological operations, however, the full Trendelenberg position is required. Healthy subjects usually do quite well in it, but stout persons not uncommonly show a good deal of cyanosis. At the close of the operation it is essential to restore the table to the horizontal *slowly:* the physics of the circulation are profoundly modified, and if any serious degree of shock is present, rapid return to normal may initiate a collapse.

In the full position, the weight of the body should be taken by metal supports attached to the table against which the shoulders may rest. To hang the entire weight of the body upon the legs may cause a good deal of after-suffering to the patient.

## The Sitting-up Position. (*See* Fig. 60.)

The object of this position is to diminish venous engorgement and bleeding in operations requiring delicate dissection in the region of the neck. Prof. Alexis Thomson introduced the position into Edinburgh surgery: the author was at first rather nervous of it, but has found that with proper precautions the patients do uncommonly well. Beyond all doubt, the position is a great help to the work of the surgeon.

Not every surgical table is capable of giving the full position without the use of many pillows and sandbags. The head-piece of the table is tilted up at an angle of about 75° or even 80°, and the patient pulled up so that the

flexion of the body occurs in the lumbar, not the dorsal spine. A small sand-pillow is placed behind the neck so as to produce slight extension. Another heavier one is placed under the thighs to prevent the body slipping down. A slight tilt downwards towards the head end may be given to the table as a whole with the same object.

FIG. 60.—Sit-up posture for operations on the neck.

One should not in this position attempt to induce a deep chloroform anæsthesia. Weak C.E. mixture at most, but better simply open-ether is the method of choice. The induction is begun with the shoulders raised to a modified degree, and the full position assumed in a light third stage anæsthesia.

Intratracheal ether combined with this position is

an ideal anæsthesia for the removal of goitre or extensive dissections in the neck for enlarged glands.

## O'Malley's Position for Nasal Surgery.
## (*See* Fig. 61.)

The author became acquainted with this useful position while acting as Anæsthetist at the Royal Herbert Hospital, Woolwich, where the Nose and Throat Department was under the charge of Major O'Malley,

FIG. 61.—O'Malley's posture for intra-nasal surgery.

F.R.C.S. Major O'Malley was kind enough in a recent letter written by request to refresh the author's memory of the details.

With the patient lying as shown in the photograph, every part of the interior of the nose can be easily inspected by the surgeon; the elevation of the head and shoulders

prevents undue bleeding, and such hæmorrhage as does occur goes down the gullet, where it does no particular harm, instead of into the larynx. The degree of flexion of the head upon the neck is not so extreme as to interfere with respiration.

The details of O'Malley's procedure are as follows :—

The interior of the nasal cavities are packed with gauze soaked in adrenalin and novocain a quarter of an hour before operation, and the patient receives a very small dose of morphia and atropine immediately before anæsthesia is induced ; given in this way it does not complicate the induction with chloroform to the same extent as if given earlier. The patient lies with the top of the head level with the top of the table, and the head and shoulders (including the upper two-thirds of the shoulder blades) supported on the usual depth of pillow. The head of the table is elevated to an angle of 45°. Induction is by chloroform or mixture ; a very light third stage only is aimed at. When it is attained the mouth is opened by a gag, and Phillip's Oral Airway inserted (*see* Fig. 7). Strict oral respiration is essential to success. If air is passing in and out of the nose, blood is spluttered all over the surgeon, seriously interfering with the harmony of the proceedings. Junker's chloroform bottle is ready, and the end of the supply pipe is passed into one of the side holes in the air way.

A small sand-pillow slipped now behind the occiput. The gauze is removed from the nose, and the operation can be performed with great comfort.

The circulation of the patient needs careful watching

for the first minute or two, but thereafter there is usually no special cause for anxiety. The area of operation is locally anæsthetised by the action of the novocain and a light chloroform sleep only is required.

O'Malley was not the first to use for nasal surgery an elevated position of the head and shoulders, the credit for this lying with the late Dr de Prenderville, Anæsthetist to the London Throat Hospital, and with the surgeons with whom he worked, notably Mr Claude Woakes. Dr Prenderville designed a chair somewhat similar to that used by dentists. There was a head rest adjustable at several angles and heights and a long support for the feet and legs, thus securing stability. He worked at a light level of chloroform anæsthesia, with the cough reflex just present. As a matter of fact also, he induced with nitrous oxide or ethyl chloride, following on with chloroform. To O'Malley, however, would appear to lie the credit for realising the advantage of securing complete oral respiration by the use of some such air way such as Phillips', and of so arranging the sand pillow at the back of the head as to permit blood running down the naso pharynx from the posterior nares, to find its way into the gullet instead of the larynx. The exact angle must be found ; if the head is too much flexed on the neck, respiration tends to be hampered ; if too little, the blood drops into the wrong orifice. The cough reflex is of course retained, but the patient should not need to use it. It is the swallowing reflex of which he stands in need. When O'Malley was at work, the author remembers very vividly that two things were anathema ; the patient must not cough, for if he

did it meant the sand pillow was in the wrong place; he must not breathe through his nose, and spray blood over the surgeon.

That extra care is necessary in the administration of chloroform to the sitting-up patient, the author would be the last to deny. There is also the question referred to on page 169, of the dangers of the adrenalin-chloroform combination. As already mentioned, surgeons now use the adrenalin *before* chloroform anæsthesia, not *during* its course, but one cannot rid one's mind of the possibility of a little pool of adrenalin solution lying in an odd corner of the nasal cavity, and being absorbed during the progress of the operation. Having in view, however, the needs of the rhinologist and the many problems which his work always sets to the anæsthetist, we may well overlook the theoretical objections to the method, and think only of the very satisfactory results which can be achieved by O'Malley's method, provided always that the utmost care and skill be exhibited by the anæsthetist, and that mutual confidence and co-operation exist between him and the surgeon.

CHAPTER XIX.

# ANÆSTHETICS IN LABOUR.

It will, no doubt, be well known to the student that Sir James Simpson established the place of chloroform as *the* anæsthetic in labour, and the author does not deny the vast blessings which his work has conferred upon parturient women. Nonetheless, the position is at the present day not as it was in the days of Simpson or even in much later times. A tradition was established that the pregnant or parturient woman had some special immunity to the action of chloroform. This thesis can no longer be maintained. If the drug is pushed to the stage of full surgical anæsthesia, its effects are in every way similar to those seen in other individuals; the supposed safety lies in the fact that it is ordinarily used in minimal dosage, to produce a condition of analgesia solely. Given in this way, there appears to be little or no danger, as the stimulus of the pains does not seem to excite the cardiac fibrillation to which Levy has drawn attention (*see* page 168).

Many techniques have been suggested for the exhibition of chloroform as an analgesic or anodyne. One is for a little of the drug to be poured on a piece of blot-

ting paper placed in the bottom of a tumbler. This the patient holds to her nose when the pain begins ; as she loses consciousness of pain her hand drops down and the administration is automatically interrupted. Another method is to fix a Junker inhaler to the end of the bed, the vulcanite facepiece being lightly strapped to the face. The patient squeezes the bulb herself, with the same automatic result as in the tumbler method. During the later period, say when the head is passing over the perinæum, the physician must take charge, and either by Junker or other method, keep up a supply of weak chloroform vapour so as to secure continuous light sleep.

In cases where the continuous method has to be adopted for a prolonged period, there is likelihood of delaying the labour by reducing the activity of the uterine muscle. Martin of Sheffield describes the combination of continuous chloroformisation with the hypodermic administration of pituitrin which by its well-known action upon unstriped muscle, prevents the advent of uterine inertia.

### Twilight Sleep in Labour.

The object of this method is to enable a woman to pass through labour without either the consciousness or remembrance of pain. Its advocates claim that with due care, this can be effected in a large proportion of cases. The drugs used are omnopon and scopolamine, or morphia and scopolamine. The former combination being the

most commonly used, will be here described, but the equivalent doses of morphia can be ascertained by reckoning $\frac{1}{5}$ of a grain of morphia as equal to $\frac{1}{3}$ of a grain of omnopon. In all cases the drugs are administered hypodermically.

The first injection is given as soon as it is certain that labour has begun. The dosage must be adapted to the type and physique of the patient. To a strong athletic primipara, as much as $\frac{1}{2}$ gr. omnopon and 1/120th gr. scopolamine should be given; to a less robust type, a smaller dose, say $\frac{1}{3}$ gr. omnopon and 1/150th scopolamine.

After the first injection, the room is darkened and all noise suppressed as far as possible. The patient is put to bed and told to go to sleep.

The second injection is given from one to one and a half hours after the first, and consists of scopolamine only, in doses of 1/450th to 1/250th gr. The smaller dose is often quite sufficient.

The great object of the method, as already mentioned, is to prevent any *remembrance* in the patient, of the pains; if upon recovery from the effects of the drugs, she has no recollection whatever of having suffered, she is said to have been *amnesic*. Osborne Greenwood of Harrogate thus describes a method of testing for the condition of amnesia:—

"The method of applying *the test for amnesia* which I use is as follows. Some object with which the patient is familiar is chosen; a convenient one being something from the infant's basket—a sponge, a comb—but any

other, such as a key, or a penny, will do. The patient is gently roused, shown the object, and asked what it is. She will usually reply promptly, 'A sponge.' She is then allowed to fall asleep at once. About half an hour later she is again roused and asked, 'What did I show you a little while ago?' If she promptly replies, 'A sponge,' she is not yet amnesic; if she appears to make an effort to remember and finally does so, she is on the verge of amnesia; but if fully amnesic she will say she does not know or will give some perfectly irrelevant reply, or perhaps do so by a counter-question. We have now attained the object in view, and as the testing proceeds during the progress of the labour a repetition of the scopolamine is needed if the patient appears to be on the verge of remembering the object shown, or if she does just recollect it, but not unless. These following doses will vary in amount as in the case of the second one."

In the average case, the best results are obtained by using for the second and subsequent doses, 1/400th or 1 450th gr. of scopolamine, which is usually found necessary every hour. This scheme must of course be checked by some such method as that above described, and the size of the dose adjusted as found necessary. The intervals of one hour appear, however, suitable for most cases. The dose of omnopon or morphia is not repeated. Some obstetricians add to each dose, or to each alternate dose, a small quantity of atropine, say 1/150th gr. This tends to counteract the *slowing of respiration*, which is often so marked a symptom of this form of narcosis. The cyanosis which results from this

diminished respiratory exchange is the most undesirable feature of the method. If affects not only the mother but also the new-born child, and is said by Hirschman to be at its height from two to two and a half hours after the first injection. On this ground he advocates that if a labour is likely to be completed within this period the dosage should be reduced.

There appears to be good grounds for stating that with omnopon-scopolamine, the force and frequency of uterine contractions are not affected; indeed, upon the whole, labour tends to be somewhat accelerated. On the other hand, with all its advantages, the method calls for so much attention and supervision that it is doubtful to what extent busy practitioners may be expected to utilise it. Again, failures are not unknown, in which instead of sleep a condition not far removed from mania is produced. No doubt further experience will show how these difficulties may be surmounted.

### Other Anæsthetics in Labour.

Provided the patient is prepared to face a slight addition to the expense, there is nothing to prevent the use of nitrous oxide and oxygen throughout the painful stages of labour, and this combination has here its usual outstanding advantage of non-toxicity. The consumption of gases may of course be large if the labour lasts some hours. Not less than 200 gallons of nitrous oxide and 60 gallons of oxygen should be available.

For the major operations of obstetrics, chloroform should not be given unless definite bronchitis is present and nitrous oxide and oxygen are not available. The shock of such an operation as a difficult version is very considerable, and quite sufficient to call for ether rather than chloroform.

CHAPTER XX.

# CHOICE OF ANÆSTHETIC.

In considering this matter, some repetition of points to which reference has already been made, is inevitable. Indeed, this chapter may be regarded as a revision of the whole subject.

Before deciding upon drug and method suitable for the individual case, we must consider the age and sex, the physical type and temperament, the possible presence of some definite pathological condition, and the nature and duration of the operation.

In relation to this last point, we must remember that an anæsthesia must be adequate to the purpose of the surgeon, but that it is improper to incur more risk to life than is necessary. For instance, an abdominal section case must be fully relaxed, and if in an individual case, chloroform is the only drug which will give that effect, there need be no hesitation in using it. On the other hand, if all that is required is the extraction of a tooth or the incision of an abscess, many other methods with a far smaller mortality are available, and in that group of cases, unfamiliarity with such anæsthetics as nitrous oxide or "ethyl chloride and ether" will not be held as a sufficient defence if chloroform has been given with a fatal effect.

## Normal Subjects.

Let us take first the case of the healthy adult about to undergo a *major* operation. For this, we unhesitatingly choose some form of open-ether, either the "Perhalation" method described on page 133, or the warmed ether method of Shipway or Pinson. In either case, a small dose of atropine and either morphia or heroin must precede the inhalation. The scope of gas-oxygen has been referred to on page 88.

If the operation be *brief*, we have a choice of methods. For the extraction of teeth, where access to the mouth is essential, the following table will help :—

| Anæsthetic Drug and Method. | Duration of Available Anæsthesia, when given as "Single Dose." | Remarks. |
|---|---|---|
| Nitrous oxide | 30 to 40 seconds | |
| Nitrous oxide and oxygen | 40 to 50 seconds | |
| Ethyl chloride | 70 to 90 seconds | Only to be recommended in special cases (*see* page ). |
| Gas and ethyl chloride | 70 to 90 seconds | |
| Gas-oxygen and ethyl chloride | 70 to 90 seconds | |
| Gas and ether | Anything up to 2 to 5 minutes according to duration of inhalation | May cause after-vomiting. |
| Ethyl chloride and ether. | Anything up to 2 to 5 minutes according to duration of inhalation | May cause after-vomiting. More portable. |
| Nasal gas | 5 to 10 minutes (not a "single dose" anæsthetic) | Requires considerable practice to give well. |
| Nasal gas and oxygen | No limit | Easier to give than above but apparatus less easily transported. |

In cases where access to the mouth is not required, and where it is therefore unnecessary to "charge up" the patient with anæsthetic, we have also a choice which may be expressed tabularly :—

| Anæsthetic. | Remarks. |
|---|---|
| Nitrous oxide | Apparatus simple : short administration can be mastered easily. A little more practice required for cases prolonged by admitting air. Muscles not relaxed, and patient may move when cut. |
| Nitrous oxide and oxygen | Apparatus more complicated, but short administrations present no great difficulty to the beginner. Muscles not completely relaxed unless a little ether added. |
| Gas and ether | Quick and safe anæsthetic. Deep anæsthesia may be obtained if ether is "pushed." |
| Ethyl chloride and ether | The same. More portable than above. |

In this group of short operations, special reference must be made to the *reduction of dislocations*. Here two important features require notice. The whole object of the proceeding is to relax muscles, and therefore nitrous oxide or gas-oxygen are unsuitable. Secondly, the tendency to reflex syncope just at the moment of reduction is very great. For this reason, chloroform has here a painfully high mortality rate ; closed-ether, preceded by gas or ethyl chloride, is undoubtedly the method of choice.

## The Extremes of Age.

Children up to the age of ten years take ether badly, salivation and bronchial secretion being sometimes very troublesome. Atropine mitigates this nuisance to a limited degree only. Chloroform is the best drug up to five or six years; from five to ten, mixture; after that, open-ether.

In children of any age, suffering from acute sepsis, the immediate annoyances and possible respiratory sequelæ of ether must be faced (*see* page 225), owing to the probability of acidosis.

As regards short anæsthetics in children, nitrous oxide, if given at all, should be freely diluted with oxygen, otherwise most undesirable cyanosis will occur. Dr Ross Mackenzie of the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Aberdeen, informs the author that he has most admirable results with gas-oxygen, even with children of one year or less. He uses, however, a proportion of oxygen much higher than is given to adults.

Old people are, unless very feeble, best anæsthetised by a mixture of chloroform and ether. Whatever anæsthetic be chosen, the utmost care must be taken to avoid cyanosis. A cylinder of oxygen should be at hand from which to enrich the atmosphere breathed, by trickling the gas into the mouth through a rubber tube, and is a great safeguard in dealing with the old.

## Sex.

On the average, women take anæsthetics much better than men, being far less liable to jaw clenching and other

forms of mechanical asphyxia, and showing less excitement during the induction stage. In the female subject induction by open-ether requires very little assistance from C.E. mixture.

## Physical Type and Temperament, and Habits of Life.

Heavily built muscular men are troublesome subjects. Induction requires a rather strong vapour of ether: if the open method is used, there may be to the beginner much temptation to make use during the induction stage of C.E. mixture to an extent not contemplated in the description given of that method in Chapter IX.: it is therefore wise to induce either with closed-ether or with C.E. mixture as described in Chapter XV., and to change to the perhalation method only when full anæsthesia is attained.

As regards alcoholics and excessive smokers, these are well dealt with by the C.E. open-ether sequence. Recourse may be made to the Ormsby inhaler as already explained on page 199. The reader is warned not to be deceived by the stout, rosy face of the typical alcoholic. He often looks a great deal stronger than he really is. Many such are really feeble subjects: although they shout and struggle no great addition to the usual vapour strength of anæsthetic is safe or required: what *is* required, is a little extra time. Once fully under, the robust appearance of the patient disappears, and the fact that one

is dealing with a rather broken constitution and a poor circulation is obvious.

In a paper read before the Scottish Society of Anæsthetists in 1921, Johnston of Aberdeen pointed out that many of the abnormal phenomena noted under general anæsthesia in alcoholics and also in those who habitually indulge in other noxious drugs such as morphia, arise essentially from defective oxygenation of the nervous system. To such cases it is therefore always wise to administer an atmosphere enriched by oxygen from a cylinder of the gas which should always be available in an operating theatre.

Reference has already been made to the fact that persons with defective nervous systems, neurotics, and especially epileptics, show persistence of some muscular movements for some time, and therefore require very careful watching.

## Special Operations and Pathological Conditions in the Patient.

These are of the utmost importance, but to consider each fully from the anæsthetic point of view, would lead us into great detail. The anæsthetist must acquaint himself with any abnormality present, and consider it carefully in the light of the general principles already explained. The following very brief hints for selected cases and operations may, however, be found useful.

### Upper Air Passages.

*Artificial teeth.* Must be removed before inducing.

*Tongue and jaw cases.*—Intratracheal ether the best—failing that, rectal oil ether, or Junker's inhaler.

For cases in which much blood is likely to be shed into the mouth, and where intratracheal anæsthesia is not being used, the instrument shown in Figure 62 is of

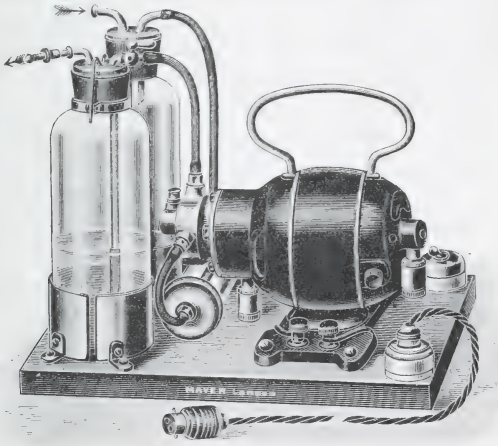


Fig. 62.—Moseley's Pump for sucking blood out of the mouth and propelling ether vapours.

value. It consists of an electrically-driven pump and two bottles. The current of air is drawn through the one bottle, and a tube placed in the most dependent part of the buccal cavity sucks out the blood as it is effused.

As regards the other bottle (placed in the figure, in front of the suction bottle), the current of air passes from the pump towards the bottle, which is filled as to three-quarters of its capacity with ether. A tap at the head regulates the amount of air allowed to pass into the bottle, and a tube conveys the ether vapour to the mouth or nose of the patient.

*Nasal operations.*—If adrenalin is to be used, it must precede, not follow, chloroform—many fatalities have occurred from injecting or even packing with adrenalin in light chloroform narcosis. Some surgeons object to ether because of the bleeding, but this can be largely remedied by raising the head and shoulders, and by packing with adrenalin. Many surgeons prefer local to general anæsthesia.

*Nasal insufficiency.*—Don't allow a patient to continue to make ineffectual attempts to breathe through a narrow nose. Establish mouth breathing, or use Silk's tubes (*see* Fig. 9).

*Tonsils and Adenoids.* Each surgeon has his own preference as regards posture and anæsthetic. The technique usually followed in Edinburgh is to give ethyl chloride by the vapour method (*see* page 186). The mouth gag is placed in position between the teeth before the administration, but it is not opened up until the mask is removed. The tonsils are removed by the tonsilectome with the patient in the horizontal position and the face looking straight up. No pillow is used. For the removal of the adenoids the patient is pulled up the table and the head allowed to hang over the end in what is known

as the Rose position. The patient is now turned on to the face and the blood allowed to pour out of the mouth into a bucket placed ready at the end of the table. The face is sponged well with cold water, and the clot in the nose squeezed out as far as possible. As soon as signs of recovery are showing in the form of phonation and movement, the patient is again turned on to the back, and is now propped up into the sitting posture. The cold sponging of the face is continued, and the patient encouraged to cough and spit out any remaining clot. Finally, he is told to blow down his nose, the face is cleaned and dried and the patient carried off to bed. The cold sponging and the elevated position of the head and shoulders should before then have brought the bleeding down practically to nil. The whole process of induction, operation and recovery should not consume more than five minutes.

*Tumours and inflammatory swellings obstructing respiration.*—The use of closed methods is very liable to cause vascular engorgement, and so to narrow the air way even more. Place the patient in the position in which he breathes most easily, which will usually be one of moderate elevation of the head and shoulders. Use open or vapour ether, or a mixture of ether and chloroform. The surgeon should be prepared to perform tracheotomy, and the necessary instruments should be ready. A cylinder of oxygen should be at hand.

*Goitres, especially exophthalmic goitre.*—Don't use chloroform : it has caused many fatalities ; morph-atropine, followed by open-ether is the safest. In bad cases,

use rectal oil ether if intratracheal is not available. The "sitting-up posture" is a great help (*see* page 229). Use anoci-association if surgeon is willing.

### Chest.

*Bronchitis and pneumonia* (*see* remarks in Chapter XVII.).

*Emphysema and rigid chest wall.*—Patients take anæsthetics badly; they cyanose quickly, the abdominal wall cannot be made either lax or quiet, since the patient's natural method of respiration is abdominal rather than thoracic. Lastly, there is frequently a dilated heart with degenerate cardiac muscle, giving an abnormal tendency to secondary syncope. Give a trickle of oxygen through a tube from a cylinder: don't be tempted to overdose with anæsthetic in the vain hope of securing ideal relaxation of the abdominal wall.

*Empyæma.*—Be careful: a good many accidents have happened. Use chloroform with added oxygen: aim at an anæsthesia just deep enough to prevent straining which might rupture the empyæma into the lung and drown him in his own pus. Withdraw the anæsthetic as soon as the abscess is opened.

*Phthisis.*—Don't use closed-ether: it may start hæmorrhage—open-ether rarely does any harm unless the condition is very acute.

### Cranial Surgery.

Two very important points arise. In the first place the brain while wonderfully tolerant of changes in tension

provided they are gradual, is very sensitive to sudden alteration in that respect. Many cases come to table suffering from cerebral compression, and it is obvious that when the trephine hole has been completed, a sudden lowering of tension is inevitable, and the respiratory centre is very liable to go out of action at this stage.

Secondly, to secure access to certain parts of the brain, particularly the cerebellum, it is necessary to place the patient in the face-down position, and (to make things worse) it may be necessary to flex the neck.

The surgeon naturally desires to have as little bleeding as possible, and with this object there was formerly a tendency to choose chloroform as the anæsthetic, enriching the atmosphere with oxygen. Consideration of the two points mentioned above will however explain the fact that under this anæsthetic dangerous collapse was a frequent incident in cranial surgery.

By common consent we now give intratracheal ether to these cases. Morphia should be avoided unless in very minimal doses, as it depresses the respiratory centre.

### Abdominal Surgery.

This group embraces so much of the every day work of the anæsthetist that its requirements have been already frequently mentioned. A few special words may however here be added.

The anæsthetist *must* give to the surgeon the most complete abdominal relaxation compatible with immediate safety and an ultimate recovery not too unpleasant

to the patient. In simple cases this can be achieved quite easily, but we must acknowledge that in difficult subjects, relaxation can only be attained at a price. For the patient it means more depression and nausea for a period after the operation. For the anæsthetist it means courage, care and skill, and added responsibility. But it is to the ultimate success of the operation that both must look for their recompense, and no anæsthetist worth his salt will allow that to be imperilled by avoidable mechanical difficulties arising during the actual performance of the operation. Once that point is made clear, we cannot be too emphatic as to the obligation which lies on the anæsthetist to spare his patient in every possible way. Deep anæsthesia is only necessary as a rule during the opening and closing of the abdomen and during its manual exploration. There are frequently prolonged periods during which little or no stimulus is being conveyed to the patient's brain, and during such times, a very light anæsthesia will suffice to keep him breathing quietly and evenly. It is here that the skill and care of the good anæsthetist has its chance, for by utilising these periods to the full, much after-suffering can be spared to the patient. Anæsthesia is an art as well as a science.

The upper abdomen is much more difficult to relax than the lower. It is only in very fat persons or those with rigid chest walls (vide supra) that any trouble in that respect is liable to be seen, for instance, in a simple appendectomy.

Lastly, let the student remember the remarks made

in Chapter III. upon the subject of muscular rigidity as an early sign of anoxæmia. A free air-way is never more essential than in abdominal surgery, and no pains to secure it can ever be wasted no matter how trifling the obstruction may appear.

### Circulatory System.

*High tension, arterio-sclerosis, and aneurysm.*—Avoid pure nitrous oxide: in severe cases, C.E. mixture and oxygen is the safest.

*Heart.*—Well compensated cases of *valvular disease* take chloroform or open-ether well, provided a free air way is maintained. Closed methods should be avoided. Cases of *myocardial disease* with dilated cavities present special dangers. Open-ether with added oxygen meets the case better than any other anæsthetic. *Pericarditis*, both acute and chronic, has been found as the determining factor in many anæsthetic fatalities.

### Acute Infectious Disease.

*Febrile patients* absorb anæsthetics very rapidly and therefore go under very quickly. Acute septic cases must not have chloroform or ethyl chloride (*see* page 225): nitrous oxide and oxygen is ideal, ether the next best. Patients who have suffered from acute infectious disease, especially diphtheria and influenza, may present some weakness of heart muscle for many months after the attack.

### Exhausted and Shocked Cases.

Give nitrous oxide and oxygen if possible—failing that, ether. Closed-ether sometimes does very well for the induction stage.

### Diabetes.

Chloroform is wholly inadmissible. Give nitrous oxide and oxygen if possible. No method is devoid of the risk of exciting acidosis. The student is however referred to the remarks upon page 226 upon the subject of Insulin. This preparation has the effect, temporary so far as we at present understand, of enabling the tissues again to assimilate sugar and break up fats to their normal end-products. If adequate time is available before operation for the proper study of the patient's metabolism, and for the amelioration in general condition which can now be obtained under Insulin treatment, there would be every reason to hope that the diabetic person could take a general anæsthetic with risk no greater than usual.

### Genito-urinary System.

*Kidneys.*—Avoid ether in acute or sub-acute nephritis: give it, however, for nephrectomy when the other kidney is sound.

*Bladder.*—Distending the bladder with lotion often causes reflex inhibition of respiration: if that happens, stop the anæsthetic, give artificial respiration, and ask the surgeon to get on with opening the bladder. *Morphia*

usually arrests temporarily the secretion of urine: it should therefore not be given if chromocystoscopy or catheterisation of the ureters is contemplated.

*Prostatectomy cases* are often rather broken subjects: give a fairly deep anæsthesia until the shelling out of the prostate is begun: then be careful—the patient is breathing deeply as a rule, and can readily get an overdose. He will inevitably suffer a fair amount of shock: be ready to lower the table at the head end if any serious collapse occurs. Don't be shy of starting a little artificial respiration even though the natural function is not entirely abolished.

*Circumcision* usually causes a good deal of laryngeal spasm, especially in children. Don't try to abolish this by deepening the anæsthesia. You won't succeed unless you nearly kill the patient. Rub the lips, and if very severe ask the surgeon to stop a minute until the crowing becomes less.

*Castration.*—Always give ether, or gas-oxygen. Castration and reduction of dislocation are the two commonest causes of reflex syncope under chloroform.

## Menstruation.

It is customary to avoid the use of anæsthetics during the period, particularly during the first day or two of it. For this there is more than a sentimental reason, for doubtless the nervous system of the patient does not at such a time react normally. Should some emergency demand that the custom be broken, however, no real danger need be anticipated.

### Pregnancy.

Save in the very early months, no special danger of causing premature parturition need be feared. Should the needs of the case call for the use of nitrous oxide, it is well, however, not to push cyanosis too far. During the later months we must remember that many women have an inherent tendency to develop bronchitis, and this must be borne in mind in choosing our anæsthetic.

*Indication for Local and Spinal Anæsthesia.*—The foregoing has been written in reference to inhalational anæsthesia solely. Mr Wood has indicated in Chapters XXI. and XXII. the class of case in which the methods he describes are to be preferred.

CHAPTER XXI.

# LOCAL ANÆSTHESIA.

By the term local anæsthesia, or more correctly *local analgesia*, is meant the loss of sensibility to painful stimuli without loss of general consciouness. It may be induced in a considerable number of ways, but for practical purposes there are only four methods of value: (1) by infiltration of the tissues to be operated upon by a solution of the drug, (2) by injecting the solution into or around the nerve trunks supplying the part, (3) by painting the solution on a mucous surface, and (4) by the application of intense cold. The last method has only a limited application. The method of injecting the anæsthetic into the blood vessels of the part is still in the experimental stage and is not to be recommended for general use.

It is advisable first to consider the behaviour of the principal drugs which are employed.

## Cocaine.

This was the first drug to be widely used for the production of local anæsthesia. It is an alkaloid occurring in the leaves of *Erythroxylon Coca*. It is only slightly soluble in water—about 1 in 1300, but the hydrochloride of cocaine is freely soluble, and it is this salt that is

commonly used for aqueous solutions. The solutions do not keep well, and should be made up shortly before being used. The drug is decomposed by boiling.

Action.—When a solution of cocaine is injected into the tissues, the sensory nerve endings become anæsthetic over the area into which the drug penetrates, direct paralysis of the nerve terminals being produced. When it is injected into or around a nerve trunk it blocks the transmission of nerve impulses. When it is applied locally to a mucous membrane, it produces, besides a loss of sensation, a feeling of constriction and a distinct pallor and contraction of the vessels, which point to a local action on the vessel walls. The drug is very frequently applied to the eye. There it produces not only local anæsthesia, but also contraction of the conjunctival vessels, and this is followed by dilatation of the pupil and often by partial loss of the power of accommodation.

Cocaine Poisoning.—Certain patients show an idiosyncrasy to the action of cocaine, and the greatest care must be exercised in its use. Absorption of small quantities usually causes mental excitement. The patient becomes restless and garrulous, and a feeling of happiness may be produced, but in other cases the patient becomes anxious and confused. In some patients a small dose is followed by a calm languorous state, resembling that produced by morphia, but with less tendency to sleep. The pulse is accelerated, the respiration is quick and deep, and the pupils are dilated. When poisonous doses have been administered, the heart becomes extremely accelerated, powerful tonic or clonic convulsions supervene, the

breathing becomes rapid and shallow, and may be finally arrested during a convulsion. In some cases a different set of symptoms are observed, fainting and collapse occur, and convulsive seizures are almost entirely absent. The heart is slow and weak, the respirations are slow and shallow, the skin is cyanotic and cold, and death takes place from gradual arrest of respiration.

Treatment.—The treatment consists in endeavouring to encourage the action of the heart by every possible means. The patient is placed flat on his back, if he is not already in this position, hypodermic injections of ether and strychnine are administered, and hot coffee given by the mouth; warmth is of great importance. Artificial respiration is commenced if respiration begins to fail. There is no specific antidote to cocaine.

Dosage.—The maximum dose of cocaine that can be given with safety is $\frac{3}{4}$ of a grain. The amount of solution that may be employed depends upon the strength. To make a 1 per cent. solution, 1 gr. of cocaine hydrochloride is dissolved in 110 minims of distilled water or half-strength normal saline; from these proportions the amount of cocaine in a given solution can be calculated. It will be seen that the amount of cocaine solution, even with strengths as weak as $\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent., that can be used with safety is small and insufficient to anæsthetise an area of any great extent. Owing to its toxicity cocaine has largely fallen out of use for the production of infiltration or regional anæsthesia, though it is still widely used in ophthalmic surgery and in the surgery of the ear, nose and throat.

## Novocain.

This drug is immensely superior to cocaine for ordinary surgical purposes. It is the hydrochloride of a synthetic base, its chemical formula being $C_{13}H_{20}N_2O_2$, HCl. It is soluble in water 1 in 1, and can be heated to 120°C without decomposition. Its solutions possess slight antiseptic properties, and are capable of repeated boiling without affecting their strength. They may be kept for several months without suffering any change in their action, a quality not possessed by any other anæsthetic agent.

The *toxicity* of novocain is one-fifth or one-seventh of that of cocaine. When used in conjunction with adrenalin, its anæsthetic activity is equal to that of cocaine. When injected into the tissues it produces no irritant effects like certain other local anæsthetics, notably stovaine. For the production of local anæsthesia it is used in $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. solution with the addition of three or four minims of 1 in 1000 solution of adrenalin chloride to each ounce. Several ounces of this preparation may be used with the greatest safety.

Allen makes the following statement regarding this drug :—"After a rather extended experience, including a large number of cases embracing the entire field of surgery, in which this agent has been almost exclusively used, we have failed to note a single case in which there has been any unpleasant local or constitutional action. We, therefore, feel thoroughly justified in unqualifiedly recommending it as the safest, most reliable, and satisfactory of any local anæsthetic agent yet introduced."

## Tropacocaine.

This drug was first isolated from the leaves of the coca plant of Java, but is now prepared synthetically. Its formula is $C_{15}H_{19}NO_2$. Its action is exactly the same as that of cocaine, except that it is one-half as toxic and the duration of anæsthesia is shorter. The hydrochloride is freely soluble in water, and can be boiled without fear of decomposition. It is the agent which is most suitable for spinal anæsthesia, as fewer unpleasant effects have followed its use than that of any other drug.

## Stovaine.

Stovaine is the hydrochloride of a synthetic compound of the benzoyl group. It occurs as a white crystalline powder, soluble in water, 1 in 14. Its solutions withstand boiling, but are decomposed when heated to 120°C. Its action is the same as that of cocaine, except that it is slightly less toxic and less powerful. It has a distinct irritant effect locally. When injected in dilute solution, it produces a slight burning pain before anæsthesia appears, and very often a distinct inflammatory reaction persists for some time after the operation. It is, therefore, unsuited for local anæsthesia. It has been widely used for the production of spinal anæsthesia, especially by the French school, but since its injurious effects on nerve tissues have become more apparent, it has been less used than formerly.

## Eucaine.

Eucaine was introduced as a substitute for cocaine, and, before the introduction of novocain, was extensively used. It has a similar action to cocaine, and although it is less toxic, it is by no means free from danger unless it is used in very dilute solutions. It is a vaso-dilator, and must, therefore, be used in combination with adrenalin. It can be boiled without undergoing decomposition, and is practically non-irritant. It has been largely superseded by novocain.

## Quinine and Urea Hydrochloride.

The use of this drug for purposes of local anæsthesia is still in the experimental stage. It is made by adding urea to a solution of quinine in hydrochloric acid. The crystals are soluble in their own weight of water. For the production of local anæsthesia it is used in strengths of .25 to 1 per cent. It is free from toxic effects, and its solutions can be sterilised by boiling.

The striking feature about this drug is the extraordinary duration of the anæsthesia, this being from one to six days. It has, therefore, been used by Crile and other American surgeons to prevent pain during the first few days after operation. The great drawback to its use, however, is that it causes a persistent indurated condition of the tissues which interferes with primary union, and which is sometimes followed by actual sloughing. In addition, it is now established that its use has been

followed by tetanus in several cases, and it is recommended that a dose of antitetanic serum should be given immediately before or after the injection of quinine.

Although the action of this drug is of great interest it cannot be recommended at present for ordinary purposes.

## Adrenalin.

Adrenalin is obtained as an extract from the suprarenal glands of animals. It is a greyish white powder, slightly soluble in water, and readily so in weak acids. The usual preparation is a 1 in 1000 solution of adrenalin chloride in normal saline. It contains .5 per cent. of chloroform as a preservative. The drawback to the animal extract is that the solution does not keep well, decomposition being indicated by a brownish colour. Of late a synthetic preparation has been introduced, which appears to have the same action, and which can be sterilised by boiling.

The action of the drug is to cause marked vaso-constriction by direct action on the vessel walls. It has no analgesic action, and is used as an addition to solutions of anæsthetic drugs. The advantages of its use are that the action of the anæsthetic is concentrated and prolonged, owing to the delay in absorption, and that the field of operation is rendered practically bloodless. In large doses it may produce toxic symptoms in the form of palpitations and breathlessness, or even actual syncope, so that care is necessary in its use. For purposes of local

anæsthesis, it is added to the solution of the anæsthetic drug in the strength of 3 drops to the ounce, and large injections of this dilute solution may be made without risk. At least twenty drops may be safely given.

## Induction of Local Anæsthesia.

Local anæsthesia may be induced by the use of anæsthetic drugs in three ways—(1) infiltration anæsthesia, (2) regional anæsthesia, and (3) by application to a mucous surface or to the surface of the eye.

Infiltration Anæsthesia.—In this method anæsthesia is induced by injection of the drug directly into the tissues to be operated upon. This method acts by paralysing the sensory nerve-endings. Although the term anæsthesia is constantly used, it is, strictly speaking, an operative analgesia that is aimed at; it is a paralysis of the pain-conducting fibres, and not of those which conduct purely tactile sensations, the patient being often able to feel the contact of the fingers and instruments during the operations. True anæsthesia can be secured, but it is necessary to use considerably stronger solutions than those that are required for the production of analgesia.

Solution of the Drug.—Novocain is far superior to any other drug for infiltration anæsthesia. The strength for most purposes is $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., though some operators find $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. quite satisfactory. In specially

sensitive parts, such as the nose, throat, or mouth, 1 or even 2 per cent. solutions may be preferable. Sufficient sodium chloride should be added to prevent osmosis of the solution into the tissue cells. The most satisfactory preparation is :—

| | |
|---|---|
| Novocain . . . | 0.25, 0.5, 1 or 2 ($\frac{1}{4}$ to 2 per cent.) |
| Normal salt solution (half strength) . . | 100.0 (.45 per cent. NaCl) |

Adrenalin is added to the solution in the proportion of 3 drops of 1 in 1000 adrenalin chloride to the ounce,

Fig. 63.—All-Metal Syringe for Infiltration Anæsthesia.

and as much as 6 ounces of this preparation may be safely given. The novocain solution can be boiled before use, but the adrenalin must not be added until after boiling.

For private practice it is sometimes convenient to procure the novocain in tabloid form of definite strength combined with sodium chloride. These tabloids are added to the necessary amount of water, and the whole boiled. The adrenalin can then be added.

Choice of Syringe.—The best form of syringe for infiltration anæsthesia is the all-metal syringe illustrated in Fig. 63. It ought to have a capacity of at least 10 c.c. The advantage of the all-metal syringe over glass syringes is that it can be safely sterilised by boiling, and does not get broken. Between the syringe and the needle is a metal segment which is curved so that the needle is set at an obtuse angle to the syringe. This renders the infiltration of the tissues at the proper depth much easier. The needles employed are the ordinary hypodermic needles which are sold in small tubes. The sizes which should be selected are 1 inch, and 3 or $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches. The needle fits into a hole in a small metal mount, which screws on to the intermediate metal portion. This section also is attached to the syringe by a screw, and these screw attachments have the advantage of rendering leakage impossible.

Failing the syringe described, a 10 c.c. Record syringe will be found to be quite efficient, if suitable needles can be obtained. The syringe, needles, and glass measure for the solution should be boiled in plain water or normal saline, as soda interferes with the action of the drug.

Technique of Injection.—The needle is introduced into the subcutaneous tissue, and pushed on slowly to its full length, the fluid being injected as the needle advances. The needle is then partly withdrawn, and pushed in in a different direction so as to infiltrate a fresh area. This procedure is repeated, and as wide an area as possible infiltrated from the one puncture. The needle

can then be completely withdrawn and introduced at a fresh point which has already been rendered analgesic. The deeper tissues can nearly always be infiltrated from the surface, but if large blood-vessels traverse the region to be infiltrated, it may be necessary to defer the deeper injection until these have been exposed. It is wise to infiltrate wide of the intended line of the incision, since it is not possible to anticipate with certainty the extent of an operation until it has been commenced. The secret of successful anæsthesia is to employ plenty of the solution, and make the injection thorough.

The skin over the area becomes blanched within a few minutes of the injection owing to the action of the adrenalin. Anæsthesia is not usually complete until ten minutes have elapsed, and the operation should not be commenced until it has been made certain by suitable tests that the anæsthesia is complete. The duration of the anæsthesia is usually at least an hour and a half.

It will be seen that the injection in the manner described above is entirely subcutaneous, the pain-conducting nerves from the skin being caught up by the drug as they traverse the superficial fascia in the area infiltrated. This method usually gives complete satisfaction, but some surgeons advise that the infiltration should be commenced with an *intra-dermal* injection so as to reduce the pain of the needle punctures to a minimum. A fine needle is employed, the prick of which is practically painless. If the skin at the selected point is pinched up between the finger and thumb, and held firmly, this lessens its sensibility. The needle is advanced

beneath the epidermis with a quick but light thrust. The injection into the substance of the skin causes a distinct wheal, which stands out from its surroundings like an urticarial wheal. From this starting-point a long needle can be introduced into the deeper tissues without pain. The intra-dermal injection may be carried along the whole length of the area to be infiltrated, each fresh puncture being made in the margin of the wheal-like area already anæsthetised.

Precautions.—The most careful asepsis is essential throughout. Infiltration with novocain causes no interference with the healing of the wound, and although cases of sloughing of the tissues have been reported after its use, these are almost certainly due to infection of the wound. Care must be exercised also to avoid injecting the drug into a vein. When this accident takes place, the drug is carried at once into the general circulation, and may reach the higher nerve centres in such quantities as to produce serious toxic results. The use of adrenalin calls for special care and thoroughness in securing all bleeding-points, as, after the effect of the adrenalin passes off, even a slight ooze may increase and give rise to a hæmatoma which may jeopardise the healing of the wound.

## Regional Anæsthesia.

In this method of producing anæsthesia, the sensory nerve paths are blocked by injecting the anæsthetic drug into, or around, a nerve trunk. By this procedure com-

plete anæsthesia is produced in the area of distribution of the nerve, and the effect corresponds to a temporary physiological section of the nerve trunk. A temporary motor paralysis is also produced in a mixed nerve.

TECHNIQUE.—The solution of the drug must be stronger than that empolyed for infiltration anæsthesia. A 2 per cent. solution of novocain in half-strength normal saline with the addition of adrenalin is employed. The injection may be paraneural or intraneural.

A *paraneural* injection is made by passing a needle through the tissues to the known position of a nerve trunk and injecting the anæsthetic around it. The solution gradually diffuses into the nerve tissues, and anæsthesia of the nerve is produced. This method is open to the objection that unless the anæsthetic is accurately placed, no anæsthesia will result, and that in the case of certain nerves there is considerable risk of making the injection into a vein. The latter risk can be avoided by using a glass-barrelled syringe and applying a little suction before the injection is made ; if a vein has been pierced, blood will enter the syringe.

The *intraneural* method is more accurate but requires the expenditure of considerable additional time and trouble, and is only employed where other methods of anæsthesia are not feasible. The tissue over the nerve having been infiltrated, the nerve is exposed by open dissection. It must not be pinched by forceps or other instruments, as such manipulations cause severe pain referred to its peripheral distribution. The injection

should be made with the nerve lying in its bed by inserting a fine needle in the long axis of the nerve, first into the sheath, which is infiltrated, and then into the nerve itself. The infiltration of the nerve is continued until it presents a fusiform swelling and this may require from 5 to 15 minims of the solution. Complete anæsthesia of its entire distribution usually results in from five to ten minutes.

A third method of inducing regional anæsthesia—first recommended by Hackenbruch—which is worth mention, is by the production of a ring of infiltration around a peripheral part, such as a finger, or around and underneath a tumour. By this means the nerve fibres are caught up by the anæsthetic and their conductivity interrupted as they enter the area to be operated upon. In dealing with such conditions as a large lipoma, or an umbilical hernia, it may be possible to avoid the use of an excessive amount of anæsthetic solution by employing this method.

## Methods of Application of Infiltration and Regional Anæsthesia.

It is sometimes stated that local anæsthesia should be limited to small and superficial operations, but with a knowledge of anatomy and of the correct technique, there are few operations which the surgeon cannot undertake with this form of anæsthesia. If we remember that the mortality from the anæsthetic is practically nil, it is obvious that it is often the duty of the operator to give the patient the choice of local anæsthesia. In urgent

conditions in which the administration of a general anæsthetic would be attended with great danger, it is often a life-saving measure. Either infiltration or regional anæsthesia may be used alone ; in some cases it is convenient to combine the two methods.

## Operations on the Upper Extremity.

Regional anæsthesia is sometimes employed in operations on the upper extremity in conditions, such as diabetic gangrene or advanced cardiac disease, where a general anæsthetic is contra-indicated. In similar conditions in the lower extremity, spinal anæsthesia is usually preferred, though it is quite possible to anæsthetise the lower limb by blocking the sciatic, femoral, and lateral cutaneous nerves with a local anæsthetic. Crile lays great stress on the blocking of nerves with a local anæsthetic during operations on the limbs as a means of preventing shock, even where a general anæsthetic is being employed. The effect of the local anæsthetic is to prevent the impulses which produce shock from passing up to the higher centres. Only those mthods which are applied to the upper extremity need special description.

Anæsthesia of the Whole Arm.—The nerves of the upper extremity are all derived from the brachial plexus except the intercosto-brachial and the posterior supraclavicular. The intercosto-brachial nerve, which is the lateral cutaneous branch of the second intercostal, crosses the axilla and pierces the deep fascia on the medial side

of the arm. It supplies the skin on the dorsal part of the medial aspect of the upper arm. The lateral cutaneous branch of the third intercostal nerve sometimes crosses the axilla also, and reaches the medial side of the arm. The posterior supraclavicular nerves from the cervical plexus descend for a short distance beyond the point of the shoulder. Injection of the brachial plexus produces complete analgesia of the shoulder and entire arm, and is particularly suited to high amputations and disarticulations at the shoulder. If the area supplied by the intercosto-brachial is encroached upon, this can be anæsthetised by infiltration with a few drams of solution injected subcutaneously along the floor of the axilla from its lateral and posterior borders. The posterior supraclavicular nerves may be caught up in the superficial fascia above the clavicle at the site where the injection of the plexus is made.

Method.—The injection may be intraneural or paraneural. The intraneural is made after exposing the plexus by an incision under infiltration anæsthesia from the junction of the middle and lower thirds of the sternomastoid to the union of the middle and lateral thirds of the clavicle. It is found lying on the scalenus medius and each of its trunks is separately injected with a few drops of 5 per cent. solution of novocain containing a few drops of adrenalin to the ounce.

The paraneural injection is less satisfactory, since the nerves are too large to be readily penetrated in effective quantities by the anæsthetic solution, and since there

are numerous veins in the neighbourhood into which the solution may be accidentally injected with dangerous results.

The injection is usually made above the clavicle. In this region the plexus lies mainly above and to the lateral side of the third part of the subclavian artery, the lowest trunk lying directly behind the vessel as it rests on the first rib. The position of the artery is first localised with the finger by its pulsations, and the skin and subcutaneous tissue infiltrated immediately above the mid-point of the clavicle. From this point a long fine needle, unattached to the syringe, is passed downwards, backwards, and medially in the direction of the second or third thoracic spine. The distance to which the needle penetrates varies from 2 to 4 c.m. When the plexus is reached a slight radiating pain is felt down the distribution of the radial or median nerve. At this point the needle is held stationary, the syringe attached, and the injection made. The reason for not attaching the syringe earlier is that should the artery be entered, blood will flow. This accident is of little consequence, the needle being withdrawn slightly and introduced a little more laterally. About 10 c.c. of a 2 per cent. solution of novocain and adrenalin is injected; the needle is then slightly withdrawn and a further 10 c.c. injected in the neighbourhood. Anæsthesia occurs in from three to fifteen minutes.

The individual nerves of the upper limb can be readily injected. The *median* can be exposed at the bend of the elbow for an intraneural injection, or a needle may be passed under the tendon of the palmaris longus at the wrist for a paraneural injection. The *ulnar* can be easily

reached as it lies on the posterior aspect of the medial epicondyle of the humerus for a paraneural or intraneural injection. The *superficial radial* can be reached for a paraneural injection about two inches above the wrist

FIG. 64.—Point at which the needle is introduced in paraneural injection of brachial plexus.

to the lateral side of the tendon of the brachio-radialis (supinator longus). The injection is made into the deep fascia, and carried across the lateral border of the forearm for about an inch, to ensure reaching all the branches of the nerve.

The *medial antibrachial* (internal) *cutaneous* can be blocked on the front of elbow by a paraneural injection about half an inch medial to the biceps tendon, and the *lateral antibrachial cutaneous* (musculo-cutaneous) at a corresponding point on the other side of the tendon.

Anæsthesia of the Arm below the Elbow.—In operations below the elbow, in conditions in which a general anæsthetic is not permissible, as in diabetes, nephritis, or advanced cardiac disease, a full anæsthesia can be obtained by intraneural injection of the median, ulnar, and radial (musculo-spiral) nerves, combined with paraneural injection of the medial and lateral antibrachial cutaneous. The median and radial are each exposed by an incision under infiltration anæsthesia, the radial being exposed in the groove between the brachialis and brachio-radialis. The infiltration to expose the median nerve usually blocks the anterior branch of the medial anti-brachial cutaneous. To make certain that the posterior branch is also anæsthetised, it is advisable to inject a little anæsthetic solution over the front of the medial epicondyle. The intraneural injection into the ulnar nerve can often be made without exposing it.

Anæsthesia of Finger.—The paraneural method applied to the digital nerves at the root of the finger gives perfect results. A circle of anæsthetic solution is first injected round the root of the finger. The needle is then passed through the infiltrated skin on each side of the finger, and a few drops of $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. novocain

solution injected around the nerves. Complete anæsthesia of the finger results in a few minutes.

This method is especially suitable in the treatment of some forms of whitlow, notably that at the nail-fold. It should not be used, however, in cases in which the inflammatory change extends as far as the root of the finger. The inflammatory reaction appears to interfere with the action of the anæsthetic, and the injection into an inflamed area may be exceedingly painful.

In the Lower Limb injection of individual nerves is rarely employed, as anæsthesia is easily obtained by the method of spinal analgesia. The *lateral cutaneous* can be injected as it lies immediately medial to the anterior superior iliac spine emerging from under cover of the inguinal ligament. This procedure may be useful in obtaining skin grafts, the grafts being taken from the antero-lateral aspect of the thigh. Amputations in the middle third of the thigh have been performed by injecting the sciatic, the posterior cutaneous (small sciatic), the femoral (anterior crural), and the lateral cutaneous at the root of the limb. The obturator nerve is difficult to find and anæsthetise in such cases. Operations below the knee can be painlessly performed by this method of anæsthesia.

## Operations on the Neck.

Tracheotomy.—This operation is conveniently and safely performed under infiltration anæsthesia. The anæsthetic solution is injected in the usual way in the line

of the incision down to the trachea but not into it, as the trachea itself is insensitive to pain.

Goitre.—A parenchymatous or adenomatous goitre can be readily removed under local anæsthesia, though the administration of ether by intra-tracheal insufflation is usually to be preferred. The principal nerve supply to the field of operation is derived from the cervical plexus, whose branches become superficial about the middle of the posterior border of the sterno-mastoid. An intradermal injection may be made first at this point, and a longer needle then passed down to the posterior border of the muscle, and an area of infiltration produced. From this point the needle is directed first upwards and then downwards round the margin of the goitre so as to produce a zone of infiltration. The same procedure may be repeated on the opposite side, so that the whole gland is surrounded with a zone of infiltration with a special depot of solution around the branches of the cervical plexus. Where only one lobe is involved, it is sufficient to carry the injection down in the middle line after one side has been encircled. When the sheath has been incised and the surface of the gland exposed, the isthmus is infiltrated and divided. The affected half of the gland is then rolled outwards, and the attachments between the deep aspect of the gland and the larynx and trachea are infiltrated, special attention being paid to the upper pole. The rest of the operation can then be carried out painlessly.

Exophthalmic Goitre may also be operated upon under local anæsthesia after a preliminary hypodermic

injection of morphia and scopolamin, though many operators prefer a general anæsthetic on account of the nervous state of the patient. In bad cases a procedure which is often of great value is ligature of the superior thyroid artery on both sides under local anæsthesia. After ligature of the vessels a colloid degeneration takes place in the gland, and the symptoms of hyperthyroidism frequently subside. After a delay of two or three months it may be possible to carry out the radical operation with little or no danger. The incision is two and a half inches in length, and crosses transversely the central part of the thyroid cartilage. The line of the incision is infiltrated with novocain solution in the ordinary way, and both superior thyroid arteries exposed and ligatured.

## Operations on the Thorax.

The greater part of the wall of the thorax is supplied by the intercostal nerves. In front the supraclavicular nerves come down as far as the second intercostal space or sometimes as far as the nipple, and the lateral and medial anterior thoracic nerves supply the pectoral muscles, sending a few twigs to the overlying skin. The long thoracic nerve extends down the side of the chest, supplying the serratus anterior. The intercostal nerves can be blocked in the region of the angles of the ribs and the supraclavicular by carrying a line of infiltration along the clavicle. The anterior thoracic can be blocked by deeper injections. In this way the greater part of the chest wall and the pleura can be anæsthetised

Acute Empyema.—This operation should always be performed under local anæsthesia. Exhaustion from septic absorption and from the antecedent pneumonia or other disease, with the dyspnœa from the pressure of the pus on the lung, may render a general anæsthetic highly dangerous. The method of producing local anæsthesia is simple and easily carried out. A point is selected on the rib which is to be resected a short distance behind the line of the incision and an intra-dermal injection made with a fine needle. A long needle is then substituted and passed down to the upper border of the rib until it reaches the plane between the external and internal intercostal muscle, the injection being continued lightly as it advances. When the desired point is reached one or two drams of the solution are injected. The needle is then slightly withdrawn and passed to the lower border of the rib to reach the same plane and the same procedure carried out. The infiltration is then carried along the line of the incision or it may be made to pass obliquely upwards to the rib above and obliquely downwards to the rib below so as to catch up the nerves coming from behind into the area of operation. The anæsthesia of soft parts, bone, and pleura is perfect after the above injection.

## Operations on the Abdomen.

The anterior abdominal wall, including the anterior parietal peritoneum, is supplied by the lower six intercostal nerves, the last thoracic nerve, and the ilio-hypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves from the first lumbar.

It is a very interesting and important fact that, although the parietal peritonæum is exceedingly sensitive to touch and pain, the visceral peritoneum and the viscera themselves are insensitive. When operations are performed under local anæsthesia of the abdominal wall, the viscera can be freely handled or incised without the patient experiencing the slightest discomfort, provided that the parietal peritoneum is not put upon the stretch by traction on the mesentery or other peritoneal attachment. Thus the colon can be opened twenty-four or forty-eight hours after being brought outside the abdominal wall without any anæsthetic in the operation of colostomy. Local anæsthesia is, therefore, well adapted to cases in which a small amount of manipulation of the viscera is required, and where a general anæsthetic would be dangerous, as in grave cases of intestinal obstruction and in cases of carcinoma of the œsophagus with weakness and loss of flesh from starvation.

Gastrostomy.—This operation is commonly performed under local anæsthesia and may be taken as an illustration of the procedure employed. The incision is made through the middle of the left rectus and is about two and a half or three inches long, beginning about an inch below the costal margin. An intra-dermal wheal is established at the middle of the proposed incision. A long needle is entered at this point and passed first upwards and then downwards in the line of the incision, infiltrating the subcutaneous fat as it goes. The needle is then passed in through the anterior wall of the rectus sheath, this

being easily recognised as a plane of decided resistance. The needle is advanced a little inside the sheath, the injection being continued as it advances. The same procedure is repeated at various points along the line of the incision. The extra-peritoneal fat may be infiltrated in the same way, the posterior wall of the sheath being identified as a deeper plane of resistance and gently pierced This step may be deferred until the posterior wall of the sheath has been exposed. The infiltration may be completed by forming a line of intra-dermal infiltration along the line of incision, though this last step can often be omitted.

The abdomen can then be opened painlessly. The only step in the operation which may cause a little discomfort is the traction which may be necessary to bring the shrunken stomach down from under cover of the ribs. The incision into the stomach is quite painless.

Gastro-enterostomy can be performed under local anæsthesia, the only special step required being infiltration of the meso-colon before it is perforated.

Appendicectomy is not suitable, as a rule, for local anæsthesia. If the cæcum is fixed or the appendix bound down by adhesions, the traction necessary to bring the appendix to the surface causes considerable pain.

In Acute Obstruction, when the procedure of enterostomy has been decided upon owing to the gravity of the patient's condition, local anæsthesia is often of great

value. The abdominal wall is infiltrated in the manner described, and a distended loop of bowel brought to the surface and sutured to the parietal peritoneum. A Paul's tube can then be introduced.

Inguinal Hernia.—Local anæsthesia is specially suited to cases of strangulated hernia, but it may be employed in the ordinary case. It should be pointed out, however, that spinal anæsthesia gives equally good results and is less troublesome to carry out.

The injection is commenced with a fine needle a little beyond the lateral end of the proposed incision. An intra-dermal wheal is produced at this point, a long needle introduced into the subcutaneous tissue, and about half-an-ounce of anæsthetic solution injected in this position. The needle is then passed downwards and medially, and the subcutaneous fat infiltrated in the line of the incision. The needle is then partly withdrawn and again advanced until it reaches the resistance of the aponeurosis of the external oblique. This is gently pierced and about half-an-ounce of solution injected underneath so as to block the ilio-hypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves. In most cases this is all that is necessary. As additional precautions the line of incision may be infiltrated intra-dermally, and an injection may be made around the neck of the sac after it is exposed.

Femoral Hernia.—A femoral hernia may be anæsthetised by infiltration along the line of the incision, or by injecting around the circumference of the hernia after

the method of Hackenbruch. After the sac has been exposed and defined, it is necessary to inject some novocain solution around the neck, care being taken to avoid the femoral vein which lies on the lateral side.

Umbilical Hernia. -Local anæsthesia is sometimes of great value in dealing with umbilical hernia, especially if it is strangulated, in stout patients who are bad subjects for a general anæsthetic. The injection is best made around the circumference of the hernia. Several intra-dermal injections are made at points around the swelling, and through these the long needle can be introduced and the deeper tissues infiltrated. If the muscles are fairly well-defined and can be felt, they may be infiltrated at the commencement, but it may be advisable in fat subjects to inject only the subcutaneous tissues to begin with, and to delay the injection of the muscles and extra-peritoneal fat until the sac has been opened and a protecting finger can be introduced to guard the intestines. Omental adhesions can be divided without causing pain. If the intestines are extensively adherent to the sac it is better to infiltrate the points of adhesion, as extensive manipulation may cause cramp-like pains.

After the circumferential injection has been made in these cases, it is best to wait for ten or fifteen minutes before making the incision in order to allow the anæsthetic solution to diffuse.

Suprapubic Cystotomy.—In operations for drainage of the bladder local anæsthesia is highly successful. The

skin and subcutaneous tissues are infiltrated in the line of the incision. The needle is then carried between or through the recti muscles and several drams injected into the layer of fat in front of the bladder. It is unnecessary to inject the wall of the bladder itself.

Hæmorrhoids.—In patients in whom there is some contra-indication to the use of a general anæsthetic the removal of hæmorrhoids can be carried out quite safely and painlessly under local anæsthesia. A circumferential injection is first carried out round the muco-cutaneous junction. It is best to start the infiltration about an inch out from the anus as the skin immediately around the anal orifice is extremely sensitive. The infiltration is made subcutaneously, and each re-insertion of the needle is made just short of where the previous injection stopped. When the circumferential injection has been completed, a finger is passed into the rectum, and the long needle introduced through the anæsthetised area, injecting as it advances, to a depth of about $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches, keeping just outside the sphincters. Four such injections are made, one on each side of the bowel, one in front and one behind, from 5 to 10 c.c. being injected in each position.

Anæsthesia results almost immediately and the anal canal can be readily dilated.

The Tongue.—For the Whitehead operation of removal of one-half of the tongue, complete anæsthesia can be obtained by the infiltration method. A long

needle is introduced at the tip of the tongue, and the injection carried in the middle line to a point behind the tumour. The mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth and the glosso-palatine fold are infiltrated, and a last injection made across the affected half of the tongue well behind the tumour.

The tongue can be anæsthetised also by blocking the lingual nerve with a paraneural injection. The nerve lies under the mucous membrane of the mouth opposite the last molar tooth. If the tongue is drawn well over to the opposite side, the nerve can be felt and the injection made around it. The only drawback to this method is that it does not anæsthetise the posterior third, which is supplied by the glosso-pharyngeal nerve.

Operations on the Skull and Brain can be readily performed by infiltration of the scalp. In the later stages of the recent war, a large proportion of operations on the skull and brain were performed under local anæsthesia. The brain itself is insensitive to touch and painful stimuli, and infiltration of the scalp is all that is necessary. A 1 per cent. solution of novocain with adrenalin has been commonly employed, and is injected into the sub-aponeurotic space so as to surround the field of operation with a wall of anæsthetic solution—the method of Hackenbruch. The advantages are that hæmorrhage is reduced to a minimum, and the head can be conveniently and safely elevated and the intracranial tension thus reduced.

## Analgesia from the Application of Cocaine to the Eye or to a Mucous Surface.

For Operations on the Eye.—Analgesia is obtained by the instillation of a few drops of a 4 per cent. solution into the conjunctival sac. This is repeated two or three times, and analgesia is obtained in five or ten minutes. It may be necessary to repeat the instillation during the course of the operation.

For Operations on the Nose, Pharynx, or Larynx cocaine is commonly used. A 5 or 10 per cent. solution is employed and is merely painted on the surface. Care must be taken that such strong solutions are not swallowed

CHAPTER XXII.

# SPINAL AND SACRAL ANÆSTHESIA.

Spinal Anæsthesia or *Analgesia*, consists in the production of analgesia in the lower extremities and in the lower part of the trunk by the injection into the subarachnoid space of an anæsthetic drug which blocks the spinal nerves as they enter and leave the spinal cord. The cord ends at the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra and the subarachnoid space at the second sacral vertebra so that there is a considerable area into which the injection may be made without risk of injury to the cord. It is, in reality, a special variety of regional analgesia, the anæsthetic being injected into that part of the subarachnoid space which is occupied by the cauda equina. The subarachnoid space of the medulla spinalis contains the cerebro-spinal fluid and communicates above with the subarachnoid space inside the skull and through the foramen of Magendie, with the ventricular system of the brain. The subdural space of the medulla spinalis is merely a capillary interval. At the upper end of the cauda equina the nerve trunks of the two sides are separated by a median interval—containing only the filum terminale—which has been termed the cysterna

terminalis. It is into this median space that the injection is made, in order to avoid wounding the nerve trunks and to procure equal diffusion of the anæsthetic to both sides of the middle line. If the injection is made among the nerve trunks on one side, a unilateral anæsthesia may result, the drug being prevented from diffusing freely to the other side by the presence of the numerous nerves.

The ligamentum denticulatum forms an imperfect scalloped septum between the posterior and the anterior nerve roots, passing from the surface of the cord to the dura mater. The presence of this septum probably explains the fact that the motor nerves are not affected with the same constancy and to the same extent as the sensory roots.

## Technique.

The drug which is most commonly employed in the Edinburgh school is Tropacocaine, and the results of its use with proper technique are eminently satisfactory. The dose of the drug for most purposes is $\frac{2}{3}$ gramme Smaller doses are sometimes used but the larger dose gives more constant anæsthesia and appears to be well within the limits of safety. The dose is dissolved in 1 c.cm. of distilled water and sufficient sodium chloride added to make a solution isotonic with the cerebro-spinal fluid. A convenient method of obtaining the drug is in glass ampoules, each ampoule containing one dose, which has been carefully sterilised.

The syringe and needle employed are illustrated in Fig. 65.

The point of the needle must be sharp but short. If a needle with a long slender point is employed, only part of the point may enter the membranes; a free flow of cerebro-spinal fluid may then take place, but when the injection is made part of the anæsthetic solution escapes outside the membranes. The needle should be $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 inches long and 1 m.m. in diameter. A stylet fits inside

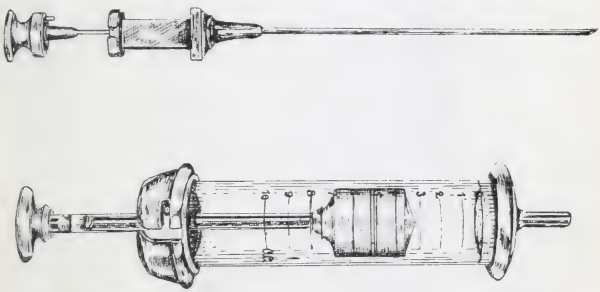


FIG. 65.—Needle and syringe for spinal analgesia. Note the short oblique character of the point of the needle. The syringe is a 10 c.c. record.

the needle and prevents it from becoming blocked during the introduction. To prevent the possibility of rusting, both needle and stylet should consist of hard nickel. The barrel of the syringe must consist of glass so that the appearance of the cerebro-spinal fluid can be seen. The Record type is very satisfactory. The syringe usually supplied for spinal analgesia has a capacity of 2 or 3 c.cm., but one holding 10 c.cm. is more useful. Syringe and

needle must be carefully sterilised by boiling in plain water; any trace of soda causes decomposition of the drug. The ampoule containing the tropacocaine is sterilised in a strong antiseptic solution so as to avoid the possibility of contamination of the hands when the drug is being transferred to the syringe.

*Method of Injection.*—The patient should be given a hypodermic injection of $\frac{1}{8}$ gr. of morphine and $\frac{1}{150}$ gr. of scopolamine an hour before the operation. There are a number of minor variations in the method of making the spinal injection, but limitations of space forbid a discussion of theoretical questions and of the relative merits of the different procedures. Only one method, which has been found safe and reliable, will be considered here. The injection is made in the space between the third and fourth lumbar spines, the objective being the mid-line of the subarachnoid space between the two divisions of the cauda equina. The position of the patient is such that the spaces between the lumbar spines are opened up as widely as possible. The most convenient plan is to have the patient sitting on the table with the head and shoulders bent well forward (*see* Fig. 66). If the patient is unable to sit up, the injection may be made with him lying on his side, with the knees drawn up and the shoulders bent forward.

The skin of the back is carefully sterilised; painting with tincture of iodine serves admirably. The ampoule containing the tropacocaine is opened, and the drug sucked into the syringe through a spare cannula. The loaded syringe is then placed on a sterile towel at the

back of the patient. With a little practice there is no difficulty in making the lumbar puncture. The fourth lumbar spine is located by noting the level of the highest point on the iliac crest—this may be indicated by an assistant. A line joining the highest points on the two

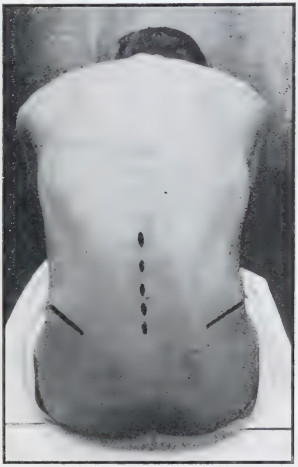


FIG. 66.—Position for the injection. The cross indicates the level at which the lumbar puncture is made—in the space between the third and fourth lumbar spines.

iliac crests will pass through the tip of the fourth lumbar spine. When this process has been carefully identified, the needle is introduced in the median plane midway between the third and fourth spine. Some surgeons prefer to go in a little to one side of the median plane, to avoid the resistance of the supraspinous and inter-

spinous ligaments. It is preferable, however, to make the puncture exactly in the middle line. The resistance of the ligaments is not great, and by this method there

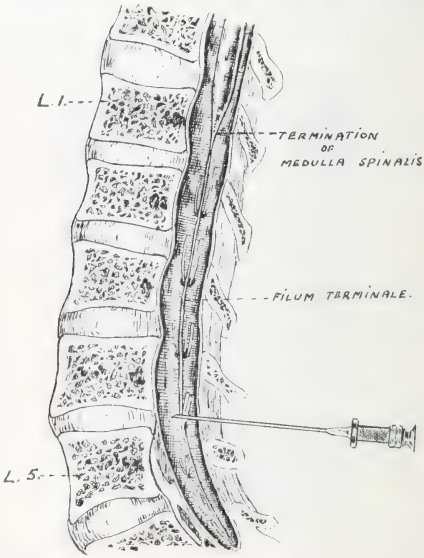



FIG. 67.—The needle has been passed in between the fourth and fifth lumbar spines. The point lies in the centre of the subarachnoid space, well below the level of the spinal medulla.

is a greater certainty of placing the injection accurately in the cysterna terminalis.

The needle is passed forwards and very slightly upwards, so as to hit off the centre of the subarachnoid

space. As the needle passes through the ligamentum flavum, there is a sudden diminution of resistance and immediately afterwards the point of the needle lies in the subarachnoid space. The passage of the needle through the membranes is sometimes accompanied by a slight pricking pain.

The stylet is withdrawn at this stage and the cerebro-spinal fluid usually trickles out drop by drop. The syringe is picked up, carefully emptied of air bubbles, and fitted on to the needle. The piston is withdrawn until the syringe is filled with cerebro-spinal fluid, which mixes freely with the anæsthetic solution, and the contents then slowly injected. The 10 c.cm. syringe is to be preferred for this purpose as it is essential to mix the tropacocaine thoroughly with the cerebro-spinal fluid. If the smaller syringe is used, it should be refilled with cerebro-spinal fluid and emptied a second time so as to ensure thorough diffusion of the drug. The needle is then withdrawn and the puncture sealed with collodion.

The injection should never be made until a free flow of cerebro-spinal fluid is obtained, since this is the only certain indication that the needle has entered the sub-arachnoid space. If failure is met with in the space between the third and fourth spines, the inter-spinous space above or below should be tried.

After the injection has been completed the patient is placed flat on his back and then lowered into the Trendelenburg position. Analgesia appears first in the scrotum and perineum, extends down the medial side of

the leg to the foot, then appears on the front of the leg, and travels up to the groin and the lower part of the abdomen. The progress of the analgesia is tested from time to time by lightly pinching or pricking the skin, the patient's eyes being screened. When the analgesia reaches the level of the nipples, the patient is raised into the horizontal position and the operation may be commenced. Some surgeons object to the lowering of the head as rendering paralysis of the respiratory centre from upward diffusion of the drug more likely. If tropacocaine is used in the dosage indicated and the table elevated when the anæsthesia reaches the nipple line, there seems to be little risk of this complication. If analgesia is only desired in the lower extremity, the lowering of the table may be omitted; but if a good anæsthesia is desired above the level of the groin, it should always be carried out.

Analgesia is complete in five or ten minutes as a rule. The duration varies from three-quarters of an hour to an hour and a half. If a preliminary hypodermic injection of morphine and scopolamine has been given, the patient lies quietly and patiently until the operation is completed. In some cases the patient actually drops off to sleep from the effects of the morphine. It is not uncommon to observe a temporary nausea and faintness about fifteen or twenty minutes after the injection has been made, and it is good practice to give the patient a little brandy and water at this stage.

## Complications and After-effects.

A great deal has been written in the past with regard to unpleasant results of spinal analgesia, but most of these would appear to have been the result of faulty technique or of the use of an impure or irritating drug. When tropacocaine is used in the manner described, the usual result is that, except for occasional nausea and faintness at the commencement, the patient has a comfortable, painless operation, and a recovery which is unmarred by the sickness and other distressing symptoms which are so common after general anæsthesia.

*Deaths* have been recorded, and these have been ascribed to the drug having travelled too high and brought about paralysis of the respiratory centre in the medulla oblongata. Too much importance has probably been ascribed to these fatal cases. They have been most common in patients greatly enfeebled by shock, old age, or debilitating illness, who are liable to die during the operation whatever anæsthetic is used. Thousands of cases have been recorded without a death, and in the hands of surgeons of skill and judgment fatal cases are almost unknown.

An occasional complication is severe *headache* which may persist for a week or longer. Other complications are all exceedingly rare; paralysis of the lateral rectus muscle of the eyeball or of other ocular muscles has been recorded, and is probably due to toxic bye-products which are the result of impurity of the drug. Persistent nausea and paralysis of the bladder and rectum and

even of the lower extremities have also been recorded, but are to be regarded as the greatest rareties, and probably due to impurity of the anæsthetic.

## Indications.

Spinal analgesia may be used for any operation at or below the level of the umbilicus. Excellent anæsthesia is obtained for the operation for radical cure of umbilical hernia, but anæsthesia above this level is not so constant, and is regarded by many authorities as unsafe.

The procedure is of special value in cases in which a general anæsthetic is unsafe: —(1) In old enfeebled patients suffering from strangulated hernia, enlarged prostate, disease of the female pelvic organs, and other conditions where anæsthesia is necessary below the umbilicus. (2) In patients who are already suffering, or who are likely to suffer, from severe shock. The drug has the same effect on the nerve trunks of the cauda equina as on the peripheral nerves—it causes blocking of the centripetal sensory impulses which are such a potent factor in the causation of shock. (3) In diabetic gangrene spinal analgesia is the safest form of anæsthesia to employ.

## Contra-Indications.

Children up to the age of fourteen or so are apt to be frightened, and spinal analgesia is better avoided except in special cases. It is contra-indicated also in septic conditions on account of the possibility of septic menin-

gitis resulting from metastasis of the infection, the drug having possibly the action of lowering the vitality of the cord and meninges. In tuberculosis and syphilis it is better avoided for the same reason. It should not be used where organic disease of the spinal cord or brain is already present.

## Sacral Anæsthesia.

It has been mentioned, in connection with spinal anæsthesia, that the spinal membranes extend as far as the second sacral vertebra. The spinal canal below this level contains the lower sacral and the coccygeal nerve roots, in addition to the filum terminale, delicate fat, areolar tissue, lymphatics, and venous plexuses. It is possible to produce analgesia in the area of distribution of these nerves by the injection of a solution of a local anæsthetic into the lower part of the spinal canal. The anæsthetic drug does not enter the cerebro-spinal fluid and there is, therefore, no risk of upward diffusion and paralysis of the respiratory and cardiac centres. The greatest care must be taken, however, not to inject the anæsthetic into one of the numerous veins in the canal. The risk attendant on this has been referred to in connection with infiltration analgesia.

The method of sacral anæsthesia has been employed in the surgery of the lower part of the rectum and perineum, in urological manipulations, and in obstetrics.

*Technique.*—The patient is placed in the prone position with a cushion under the pelvis. This elevates the

buttocks, partially flexes the hips, and serves to accentuate the bony landmarks. The skin around the sacrum and over the buttocks is carefully sterilised as for a laparotomy. With the index finger of the left hand the tip of the coccyx is palpated in the anal groove. The finger then follows the posterior surface of the coccyx upwards until the two sacral cornua are felt on either side. Somewhat higher in the median plane the finger identifies the fourth sacral spine, indicating the apex of the sacral hiatus which forms the lower end of the sacral canal. The membrane closing the hiatus forms a depression just below, and often gives the examining finger a sensation which has been compared to that produced by palpating a fontanelle.

With the finest hypodermic needle a dermal wheal is raised over the centre of the sacral hiatus, and the underlying subcutaneous tissues and the hiatal membrane are infiltrated so that the passage of the larger needle will not cause pain. A spinal puncture needle of small calibre is then introduced through the skin with the bevel upward and at an angle of twenty to thirty degrees with the skin surface. There is a sensation of increased resistance as the hiatal membrane is reached, and when this is perforated the point of the needle impinges against the bone of the anterior wall. The needle is then withdrawn one or two millimetres and depressed about twenty degrees farther until approximately parallel to the sacral canal. It is then advanced gently and slowly three or four centimetres into the canal, and usually passes readily. The stylet is then withdrawn, leaving the needle in place. If

blood or cerebro-spinal fluid escapes, it has entered one of the large veins or the dural sac, and it should be

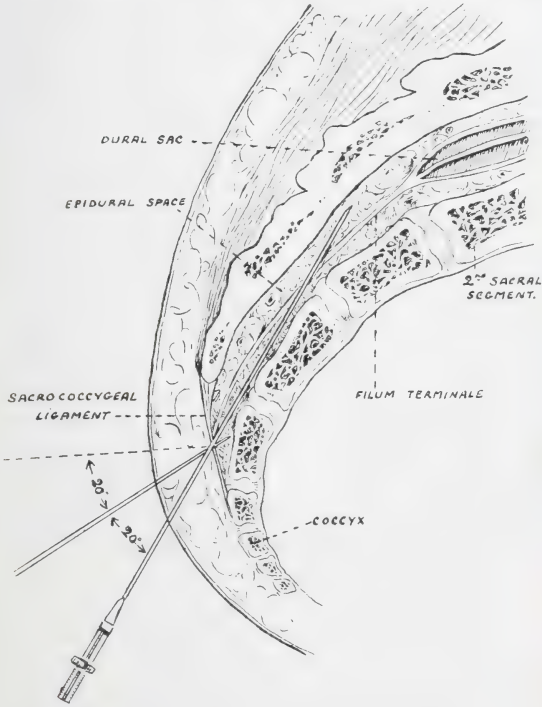



FIG. 68.—Sacral Anæsthesia. To illustrate the method of introducing the needle (*after Meeker & Frazer*).

slightly withdrawn, or its position changed until the blood or spinal fluid ceases to appear.

The syringe is then connected and the injection made very slowly and gently. The needle is withdrawn as the injection progresses until twenty to thirty cubic centimetres of novocain solution has been injected, when the tip of the needle is just within the hiatal membrane. The strength of the novocain solution should be 1 per cent. in robust patients and .5 per cent in weakly subjects. The puncture in the skin is sealed with collodion.

This method has attained to a considerable degree of popularity, but it has the serious drawback that in spite of correct technique the anæsthesia is sometimes incomplete. To ensure a complete and a more extensive anæsthesia, the method has been combined with "Transsacral nerve block anæsthesia." After the injection has been made into the sacral canal, the anterior rami of the sacral nerves are injected by passing a needle forwards through each of the posterior sacral foramina in turn and reaching the nerves at their exit from the anterior foramina. The procedure requires considerable skill and an exact anatomical knowledge of the shape and position of the sacrum.

Meeker and Frazer of the Mayo clinic have recently reported a series of 225 cases of the combined method with only three failures. The anæsthesia has been sufficient for removal of carcinomata of the lower part of the rectum, and they express great satisfaction with the method. (*Surgery, Gynecology, and Obstetrics*, December 1922.)

## Analgesia Produced by Freezing.

A transient analgesia can be produced by freezing the skin. An ether spray was formerly employed, but was found to be troublesome and inconvenient. The most convenient procedure consists in freezing the part by means of a spray of ethyl chloride. This drug is supplied in a glass cylinder with a very fine outlet so that it breaks up into a fine spray as it escapes. The cylinder is held about 8 or 10 inches from the patient's skin, and pressure applied with the thumb to a stopcock on the neck of the cylinder. Under the influence of the heat of the hand the liquid escapes in a fine jet which impinges on the patient's skin. Freezing takes place in a few seconds, the frozen patch becoming hard and white. The freezing can be hastened by blowing on the skin.

This method is only suitable for the opening of small abscesses and other procedures requiring a very short anæsthesia. The anæsthesia is very imperfect, and only lasts for a few seconds. Many patients appear to have as much pain with this form of anæsthesia as without it.

# APPENDIX I.

## SOME EXPERIMENTAL OBSERVATIONS BY THE AUTHOR UPON THE PHYSICAL FACTS OF ETHER EVAPORATION.

The apparatus was very simple. It consisted of a pump which would propel air towards the ether bottle; a glass bottle containing ether, the roof of which was pierced by two tubes, one of which carried the air from pump to bottle, and the other from bottle to a Waller's tube, where it was collected. The percentage of ether in the air was then estimated by Waller's gravimetric method. The ether jar stood in a water bath which could be either left otherwise empty or filled up with water of known temperature. The following tables show some of the results. In each case, the air was propelled for five minutes, by which time the cooling effect upon the ether was very marked; the figures given are averages taken from several observations.

## TABLE A.

AIR BLOWING OVER SURFACE OF ETHER.

| Temperature of Bath (Fahr.) before experiment. | Quantity of ether before experiment. | Rate of pump. | Temperature of ether (Fahr.) at end of experiment. | Percentage obtained. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 75 | 100 c.c. | 30 | 50 F. | 12.7 |
| 85 | 100 c.c. | 30 | 52 F. | 12.8 |
| 75 | 100 c.c. | 90 | 45 F. | 8.7 |
| 85 | 100 c.c. | 90 | 45 F. | 8.8 |
| No water in bath | 100 c.c. | 30 | 32 F. | 8.2 |
| No water in bath | 100 c.c. | 90 | 23 F. | 5.4 |
| No water in bath | 200 c.c. | 30 | 38 F. | 9.6 |
| No water in bath | 200 c.c. | 90 | 29 F. | 6.6 |

## TABLE B.

Showing increased percentage obtained by "bubbling through" instead of "blowing over" ether—

WATER BATH AT 75° FAHR.

| Quantity of ether. | Rate of pump. |
|---|---|
| 100 c.c. | 30 |

Air blown over surface of ether gave percentage of ether . . . . . 12.8

Air bubbled *through* ether . . . . . 23.8

## TABLE C.

Showing amounts of ether vaporised at varying pump rates. In each case, the temperature of the water bath was 75, and the initial amount of ether was 100 c.c.—

| Pump Rate. | Amount of Ether Vaporised. |
|---|---|
| 30 | 30 c.c. |
| 90 | 38 c.c |

These experiments justify one in drawing the following conclusions :—

1. The effect of a water bath has a marked effect in increasing the strength of the vapour yielded, but small variations in the temperature of the bath (as between 75 and 85 Fahr.) have but little effect.

2. If ether is vaporising quickly, it cannot pick up heat from the water bath as quickly as it is losing its own heat. Though not shown in the tables, the actual loss of temperature on the water bath was small—about 2 degrees Fahr. during the five minutes experiment.

3. The more forcible the blast of air blown over or through the ether, the less the percentage of ether yielded. Table C shows that this loss of percentage is not compensated for by an increase in the total amount vaporised.

Of course, these results only apply to the case of a strong current of air. If the current of air were *very*

small, the ether could pick up heat as fast as it parted with it, and within moderate degrees a little increase of the air stream would increase the total amount of ether vaporised without reducing the percentage strength.

These results are of some practical importance in connection with so-called "vapour anæsthesia" as given for instance by Shipway's instrument (page 136), and in devising and using the ether chambers of intratracheal apparatus.

# APPENDIX II.

## THE PERCENTAGE STRENGTH IN OPEN ETHER.

Hewitt and Syme (*Lancet*, 27th Jan. 1912) estimated the percentage of ether obtainable from an open mask with varying materials and quantities of the drug. The results are tabulated below :—

A.—A Whole Mask just Moist.

| Material stretched on mask. | Number of layers. | Percentage obtained. |
|---|---|---|
| Gauze . . | 4 | 11 |
| | 8 | 11.4 |
| | 12 | 11 |
| Flannel . . | 1 | 8.0 |
| | 2 | 8.0 |
| Lint . . | 1 | 10.0 |

B.—Whole Mask Wet.

| Material stretched on mask. | Number of layers. | Percentage obtained. |
|---|---|---|
| Gauze | 4 | 12 |
| | 8 | 13.4 |
| | 12 | 14.0 |
| Flannel | 1 | 8.0 |
| | 2 | 8.0 |
| Lint | 1 | 8.0 |

By excessive douching the observers were able to obtain 17 per cent.

In these results, air and ether vapour were drawn by a pump through the material to imitate the inspiration, but no attempt seems to have been made to imitate expiration. The effect upon the material used of moisture condensed from the expired air is not taken into account in these experiments. This is a serious hiatus in the argument, particularly as regards lint. This material in actual use rapidly becomes quite sodden, and ether will not vaporise from it properly.

In spite of this fault, these observations may probably be taken as being reasonably accurate.

With them may be compared the figures of Karl Connell, who, working with quite accurate methods,

estimated the percentages of ether necessary to induce and maintain anæsthesia :—

| Period of Anæsthesia. | Percentage. |
|---|---|
| First 5 minutes (*i.e.* induction) | 18 |
| Next 25 ,, | 14 |
| Next 30 ,, | 12 |
| Next 60 ,, | 12.8 |

"Bad" subjects on the average required an extra 4 per cent. during first half hour, feeble patients required 2 per cent. less. (*Journal* of the American Medical Association, 22nd March 1913.)

# APPENDIX III.

## THE ACTION OF ANÆSTHETICS UPON THE BLOOD.

*The Blood Gases in Anæsthesia.*

Buckmaster and Gardner (*Journal of Physiology*, vol. xli., p. 246), analysed the blood gases in various stages of chloroform anæsthesia, and some of their results are shown below in tabular form. They show a very definite

| | Average volume in c.c. per 100 c.c. of blood. | | | Average composition per cent. of gas. | | | Relation of $O_2$ to $CO_2$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | $CO_2$ | $O_2$ | Nitr. | $CO_2$ | $O_2$ | Nitr. | |
| Normal cats . . | 25.07 | 13.60 | 1.00 | 63.2 | 34.28 | 2.52 | 1 to 1.84 |
| Reflexes just reappearing . . | 29.02 | 11.49 | 1.33 | 65.06 | 25.44 | 2.87 | 1 to 2.55 |
| Reflexes just disappearing . . | 29.57 | 7.78 | 2.15 | 69.14 | 18.17 | 5.09 | 1 to 3.8 |
| 2nd Stage Anæsthesia . . . | 36.00 | 8.14 | 1.49 | 71.27 | 16.12 | 2.95 | 1 to 4.32 |

reduction in the oxygen content of the blood. So far as one gathers from the text of the paper, the animals were not subjected to any considerable trauma during the

progress of the anæsthesia, so that the figures arrived at with regard to the $CO_2$ content do not bear upon the Acapnia question. If there was no trauma, there would be no deep breathing, and a reduction of $CO_2$ could not be expected.

Buckmaster returned to this subject in a paper read before the Anæsthetic Section of the Royal Society of Medicine recently.

By further research he is satisfied that there is a reduction of from 30-80 per cent. in the ventilation of the lung quite early in chloroform anæsthesia, which of course corresponds with the increased $CO_2$ content of the blood. He notes however that under ether, there is practically the same reduction of lung ventilation, and increase of $CO_2$, but there is not the reduction of oxygen in the blood so strikingly shown in the case of chloroform. He concludes that there is some special affinity between chloroform and the red blood corpuscles which results in a lowered oxygen content

### *Other Blood changes in Anæsthesia*

Hamburger and Ewing (*Journal* of the American Medical Assoc. 1908) examined the blood changes incidental to surgical anæsthesia Their results may be condensed as follows :—

*Nitrous Oxide.* — Hæmoglobin is not permanently decreased and no anæmia follows the administration. Hæmolysis is not increased. The coagulation time of

the blood is not always affected in the same direction. Usually it is slightly increased.

*Ether.*—The hæmoglobin is slightly reduced and anæmia persists for seven to ten days. Hæmolysis is not, however, materially increased. There is some evidence of blood inspissation. The coagulation time is markedly increased.

*Chloroform.*—The hæmoglobin is reduced and a distinct anæmia produced. Hæmolysis is definitely increased. There is a slight increase in the coagulation time.

### *Acidosis in Anæsthesia.*

It has already been stated (see page 15) that diminished alkalinity of the blood is no longer accepted as an explanation of surgical shock, but rather as a side effect of anoxæmia. There would appear however to be some "acidosis" almost necessarily associated with anæsthesia.

Carter in the archives of Internal Medicine, Chicago, September 1920, states that ether diminishes the alkali reserve even if respiratory exchange is artificially controlled and made uniform. The greatest decrease is at the end of a long anæsthesia; it rapidly disappears in the recovery stage reaching normal within two hours.

Reimann dealt with the same subject at a meeting of the American Association of Anæsthetists in June 1919, his results being supported by another speaker, Wm. de B. MacNider. The latter showed that if the

lowering of alkalinity be allowed to go too far, the kidney ceased to function and became unresponsive to diuretics.

The results of these and other workers give support to the practice referred to on page 65, of administering alkalies as a routine, for a day or two before operation under general anæsthesia.

# APPENDIX IV.

## MOTTS' INTRATRACHEAL APPARATUS.

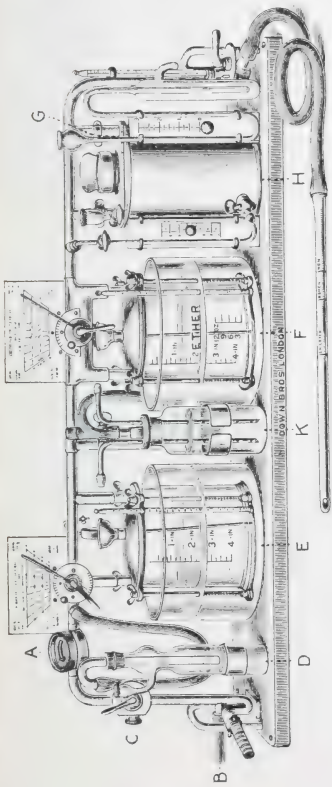



Fig. 69.—Mott's Dosimetric Anæsthetic Apparatus.

The following extracts from a paper by Dr Mott are published by the makers of this machine and best describe its rather intricate design. The author has had a chance to use the apparatus of this type recently supplied to the Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh, and has been much pleased with the results obtained. The only other comment upon the apparatus which he wishes to make is that for his own part he would have been quite satisfied with a design which did not permit more than 2% of chloroform vapour to be supplied. He does

not however suggest that there is anything in the apparatus which should cause the least danger if used by an expert.

The general scheme of the appliance is shown in Fig. 69, while details of the dials at the heads of the chloroform and ether chambers are given in Figs. 70 and 71 respectively.

The following extracts from Dr Mott's paper * will best indicate the design and purpose of the various parts of the apparatus as made by Messrs Down Bros.

A. *Flowmeter.*—This is a little dial indicator, the pointer of which shows the number of litres of air passing per minute; it is this fitting, the importance of which cannot be over estimated, which has enabled the instrument to be made an accurate dosimetric apparatus since, with its aid, diagrams have been drawn up showing the percentages of Chloroform or Ether vapour given under conditions of use, and its employment appears to make Intratracheal Anæsthesia safer when dealing with children and bad subjects. In these cases in which the apparatus has been used for young children, Intratracheal Insufflation has given as good results as in adults. So far the writer has used 10 litres of air per minute with children of eight years of age, or for still younger children even a lesser stream has been used; the glass tube being left out of the mercury in the safety valve for the very young children.

B. *Negative Pressure.*—In common with other "Positive Pressure" apparatus this one has a tap at the outlet end which, when opened, deflects the air stream into the open air (some authorities advocate that this measure

* Proc. Roy. Soc. Med., 1920, vol. xiii., pp. 25-38.

should be practised every now and then in order to allow the large veins in the thorax to fill; in young children and bad subjects particular attention should be paid to this). This method has the disadvantage that the air discharged contains a certain amount of anæsthetic vapour.

An alternative way of producing this "negative pressure" has, therefore, been arranged. There has been added to the inlet end of the apparatus a short junction to which it is intended to connect a stout piece of rubber tubing about three or four feet long. The end of this tubing is held by the anæsthetist in his left hand and the opening occluded by the thumb; by raising the thumb from time to time air is allowed to escape and the pressure in the apparatus reduced to zero; a "negative pressure" is thus obtained without the inconvenient addition of any anæsthetic to the air. The anæsthetist also may find the above unobtrusive manœuvre more convenient to execute. A metal stopper is supplied to plug the tubing junction when it is not being used

C. *Pressure Regulation.*—Above the air inlet is a pressure regulating tap, which serves as a fine regulator for the air pressure in the apparatus when the ordinary electrical control is not sufficiently delicate. To this tap an Oxygen Cylinder can be attached for artificial respiration work. (The Oxygen Cylinder is more conveniently attached to the sight feed bottle when it is required during anæsthesia.)

D. *Safety Valve.*—The mercury safety valve is of the standard Kelly pattern. It should always be in action in intra-tracheal work. The glass tube which dips into the mercury is graduated in cm., and this enables the anæsthetist to set the pressure in the machine at any desired maximum. The writer has done some abdominal work under a very low constant pressure, so low that during expiration air bubbles through the safety valve.

E. *Chloroform Chamber.*—This should be filled to the mark $2\frac{3}{4}$ in. from the top and the glass vessel outside should be filled with cold water, the percentage given when the air at various rates of flow is allowed to pass over the Chloroform, is shown on the scale fitted to the tap. For the sake of clearness the convention has been adopted of marking the .5% points on the dial with red rings. It will be seen on the dial that the percentages of Chloroform increase uniformly with the opening of the tap up to $2\frac{1}{2}$% whatever volume of air is passing. But beyond this point with an air stream of less than 20 litres

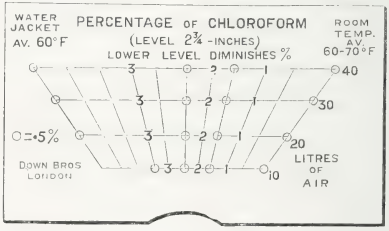



FIG. 70.—Chloroform Indicator of Mott Instrument.

the percentage of Chloroform is higher than when the air stream is of 20 litres or over. It must be noted that the dial is a composite chart plotted from several charts and series of observations.

According to varying factors, chiefly the temperature of the water bath, the actual percentages given when the Dial indicates 2% may be 1.8 or 2.2%. Evaporation depends on the temperature of the Chloroform which will become cooler in proportion to the duration of the operation and, therefore, give a lower percentage. Colder water in the water jacket or a lowering of the level of the Chloroform in the vessel also slightly diminishes the percentages.

Although $2\frac{1}{2}$-3% is sufficient for most abdominal

operations, 3.5% has been used on many occasions in robust subjects for shorter and longer periods.

The grading of the taps was greatly aided by the kind help and courtesy of the late Dr Augustus Waller of the University of London, and Dr C. Dorée, of the Borough Polytechnic, who kindly placed their laboratories at our disposal. The work was done throughout by Dr Waller's gravimetric method.*

Through the stoppers of the anæsthetic chambers are fine siphon pipes which can be used for emptying the chambers without dismantling them. In order to empty

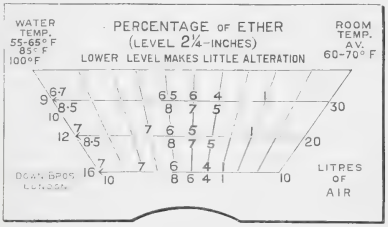



FIG. 71.—Ether Indicator of Mott Instrument.

the chambers the outlets to the apparatus should be closed and a positive pressure induced by means of the pump. As a practical matter the writer prefers to remove the Chloroform Chamber to empty it and leave the chamber dry, so as not to leave even the smallest amount of Chloroform that might decompose.

F. *Ether Chamber.*—The Ether Chamber should be filled to $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches from the top of the glass jar, which is graduated to facilitate accurate filling. The Dial above the Ether Chamber shows the percentages of Ether at various points for air streams of 10, 20, and 30 litres per minute. The scale also gives varying percentages of

* Jour. Phys., vol. xxx., July 11th, 1903.

Ether for these air currents when the temperature in the water jacket is at :—

(*a*) 55-65° F.
(*b*) 85° F.
(*c*) 100° F.

(*a*) For the sake of clearness the percentage figures for 55-65° F. are engraved in green above the scale line. (*b*) The 85° F. percentages are in yellow figures below the scale line. (*c*) The percentages for 100° F. are marked in red, and have only been noted for the full air stream of 10, 20, 25, and 30 litres of air per minute. The lesser percentages for 100° F. have not been noted as they are not necessary.* With reference to the percentages of Ether obtained under various conditions it will be noted that when the Ether liquid is boiling, *e.g.* when the water in the chamber jacket is kept at 100° F. there is little surface cooling, and the air stream is picking up Ether vapour that is already formed above the Ether liquid, and so one gets 9, 10, 12, and 16%, *i.e.* an *increase of the percentages of the Ether vapour as the air stream is lessened.* But when the water in the chamber jacket is at 85° F. or under, the air above the liquid Ether is not saturated with Ether vapour ; evaporation in this case depends upon the area of the liquid Ether. When 30 litres of air are passing evaporation is not only the result of the increased air stream, but also the increased surface area due to disturbance by pulsation from the motor, therefore, much the same percentage is given for all the different volumes of air, whether 10, 20 or 30 litres are passing with a water jacket temperature of 85° F. The same remark applies with water jacket temperatures of between 55° and 65° F. With low temperature water jackets one does *not* get diminishing percentages with increasing volumes of air

* J. Stuart Ross, Edinburgh, *Anæsthetics*, 1919, pp. 201-2. (Appendix. I. of this edition, J.S.R.)

as at 100° F. because the important factor of increased surface from which evaporation can take place comes into play, and this latter factor tends to neutralise the cooling factor.

Without some such explanation, the percentages given on the Ether chart might be thought rather perplexing, as it will be remembered from data already published that the greater the stream of air over the surface of a liquid such as Ether the greater will be the cooling effect, and, therefore, a lesser percentage of Ether would be expected. The figures on the Chloroform and Ether dials are, however, correct, and based on actual weighings which were taken with the stream of air gradually increased or decreased by the tap as they would be under the conditions of use. (This is very important since in actual use one starts with the Ether tap half or fully open, and with the Chloroform at 1% or 2%, because neither intra-pharyngeal or intra-tracheal methods are put into use until the patient is fully under, so that at the beginning of the operation, a higher percentage of Chloroform or Ether could be given, than is actually recorded on the dial.)

If the amount of air that is passed over the Ether and Chloroform surfaces is sharply altered at any time, the figures given on the dial will not be accurate for a few moments, for instance, if an air stream of 30 litres per minute is given by the motor and passed through the apparatus and the tap is gradually opened, the scale given on the apparatus will be correct, but if the tap is sharply opened to its full extent for the first few moments, there will be a higher percentage of Ether (or Chloroform) passed over than the 6.7% (and 3.5%) indicated on the dial, the reason for this probably being that the cooling effect of the air stream has not had time to become a stable factor; in point of fact, the experiment would

probably give 7·5% of Ether under these conditions; also, if the pointer be then moved back sharply to the 1% point there will be less than 1% given, because the surface of the Ether would be "super-cooled" in proportion to the length of time the tap had been opened.

G. *Heating Chamber.*—This should be refilled with boiling water as often as is required to maintain the temperature. In the centre of the heating chamber is a metal box in which should be placed a small conical measure or test tube filled with water in order to add moisture to the air stream.

The opening to the Ether Chamber must be closed by the stopper if an electric heater is in use, on account of the danger of a spark.

H. *The Manometer.*—The apparatus is fitted with the standard Kelly Mercury Manometer, which will indicate the pressure inside the apparatus. An average pressure of 15 m.m. Hg. is generally recommended for operations with the unopened chest. When using intra-tracheal insufflation, it is the writer's practice to push the glass tube so far into the Mercury that either there is slight bubbling or bubbling is just abolished.

There is a second manometer on the apparatus, fitted with a safety trap, which renders impossible the inspiration of any water from it, should it become accidentally attached to the intra-tracheal catheter. The manometer is generally filled to the zero line with red fluid, so that it can be more easily seen. A second catheter is passed through the mouth into the œsophagus for the same distance as the intra-tracheal catheter and attached to the manometer, which then gives a visible record of the respiration. The Anæsthetist is instantly put *au courant* with any change, and it would seem that under favourable conditions that pressure given on this water manometer is the true pressure of the respiratory tract.

(8) With regard to this point it is, of course, well known that the mercurial manometer on an intra-tracheal apparatus gives the pressure in the machine, and only indicates a ration of the pressure in the trachea. This is easily demonstrated, since on occlusion of the catheter tube—say at the patient's teeth—a condition which means that no pressure at all is being exercised in the trachea—the mercury manometer on the apparatus registers its maximum pressure, whereas fitting the very largest catheters practicable, *i.e.* a most favourable condition for exerting pressure in the trachea, will always give a minimum mercury reading.

K. *$N_2O$ and O.*—In the centre of the apparatus is a bottle similar to those devised by Gwathmey, Boyle, or Marshall. It has an aluminium stopper and two metal tubes dipping down into the water; one of these tubes is connected to an Oxygen cylinder and the other to a Nitrous oxide cylinder. By regulating the pressure from the cylinders and observing the gas bubbling through the fine holes into the water this can be used to give any desired mixture of Oxygen and Nitrous Oxide. Between the mixing bottle and the main circuit of the apparatus is a tap which is used to cut this mixing bottle out of the circuit when very high pressures are being used. The Chloroform and Ether Charts are not to be read as indicating correct percentages when gas and Oxygen is being used.

# INDEX


A

Abdominal operations, xi, 11, 251
Abdominal muscles, rigidity of, 29 252
Abnormalities of anæsthesia—
  minor, 57
  major, 203
Absorption of anæsthetics, 1
Acapnia, 15, 41, 46, 60
Accidents of anæsthesia, 203
Acidosis, 221
  in shock, 15
  prevention of, 65
Adenoids, 189, 248
  in status lymphaticus, 214
Adrenal glands, secretion of, 15
Adrenalin, 170, 234, 263
Aedentulous patients, 36
After effects of anæsthetics, *see* Sequelæ
Ages, selection of anæsthetics at various, 244
Air-passages, operation upon, 247
Air-way, natural (*see* Respiration)—
  artificial, 35
  prevention of obstruction in natural, 33 *et seq.*
Alcoholics, anæsthesia in, 4, 131, 154, 199, 245
Alkaloids, use of, 19, 66, 133
Aneurism, 84, 253
Anoxæmia, 22, 24
  without $CO_2$ excess, 30
  as a secondary effect of shock, 31
Arm, management of in anæsthesia, 227
  regional anæsthesia of, 271
Arteries, spouting of, xi, 57
Arterio-sclerosis, 81, 253
Asphyxia, 22, 24
  vicious circle of, 32
Athetosis, 58
Atropine, 66, 166, 212
Auer and Meltzer, 161

B

Barth 3-way gas tap, 76
Bicarbonate of soda in acidosis, 65, 225
Bladder, reflexes from, 61, 254
  local anæsthesia for, 283
Blistering, danger of, by chloroform, 165
Blood, changes in, during anæsthesia, 310, *et seq.*
Blood-gases, 23, *et seq.*, 309
  in $N_2O$ and $O_2$, 110
Blood, reaction of, in shock, 15
  in anæsthesia, 311
  loss of volume of, in shock, 14
Blood pressure, in natural sleep, 3
  in shock, 10
  in asphyxia, 27
  in nitrous oxide, 71
  in ether, 117
  in chloroform, 164
  in ethyl chloride, 183
  clinical observation of, 13, 57
Blowing respiration, 53, 235
Boothby, on ether percentages, 149
Bohr, on effects of $CO_2$ want, 46
Boyle, Mr Leonard, 103
Brachial plexus, block anæsthesia of, 271
Brain (*see* Nervous system)
  local anæsthesia, for operations upon, 285
Breath-holding, 61, 169, 171
Bronchitis, 217, 250
Buckmaster and Gardner, 309

C

Carbon dioxide, 23, 41, 309
  excess of, not effective in deep anæsthesia, 27
  excess of, results of, 42
  want of (*see* Acapnia)
Cardiac cyanosis, 57
Cardiac disease, 253
Cardiac failure (*see* Syncope)
Castration, anæsthesia in, 255
C.E. mixture, 132, 196
Centripetal impulses, 10
Children, 69, 143, 244
Chloretone, 142
Chloride of ethyl (*see* Ethyl Chloride)
Chloroform, 163
  administration, 170
  decomposition of, 163
  delayed poisoning by, 221
  physiology of, 154
Choice of anæsthetic, 241
Circulation in asphyxia, 28
  in chloroform, 164
  in ether, 112
  in ethyl chloride, 183
  failure of (*see* Syncope)
  observation of, xi, 56
  in nitrous oxide, 71
  in shock, 14, 16
  in valved breathing, 42
Circumcision, 255
Clarke's apparatus, 99
Clenching of jaws, 25, 38
Clinical phenomena of asphyxia, 28
  of normal anæsthesia, 51
Closed ether, 119
Closed method, features of, 45, 46
Cocaine, 257
Coleman's nasal gas inhaler, 87
Collapse (*see* Syncope)
Conduction of nerve impulses, 6
Connell, Karl, 136, 161, 307
Conjunctival reflex, 50
Convulsions, 28
Corneal reflex, 50
Cranial surgery, 250, 285
Crile, Professor, 8, 14
Crowing respiration, 26, 39, 255
  at night, 215
Cyanosis, 28, 57, 80
Cylinders for nitrous oxide, 73
  for oxygen, 92

D

Dangers of Chloroform, Professor L. Hill upon, 183
Daniell, Dr J. W. B., 185
Death, causes of, 28, 166, 203, *et seq.*
Deep breathing, 15, 45, 60
Degrees of anæsthesia, 49
Dental anæsthesia, 81, 85, 190, 192
Dextrose in acidosis, 225
Diabetes, 254
Difficulties of anæsthesia—
  major, 203
  minor, 57
Dilatation of pupils, 8, 28, 54, 80, 96, 187, 207
Disease, relation of anæsthesia to, 246
Dislocations, anæsthesia in reduction of, 243
Dosimetric method for chloroform, 172
  for ether, 136
Dott, Mr N., direct laryngoscope, 155
Douche method, 47
Dread (*see* Fear)
Drop bottles, chloroform, 177
  ether, 126
Drop method, 47, 126
Drugs for local and spinal anæsthesia, 257 to 264

E

Emphysema, 250
Empyæma, 250
Enema, before operation, 64
Ethanesal, 110
Ether, 113, *et seq.*
  chemistry of, 115
  closed, 119
  intratracheal, 145, *et seq.*
  open, 126

Ether, preceded by $N_2O$, 200
by Ethyl chloride, 201
physiology of, 110
rectal, 142
warmed vapour, 135
Ether tremor, 58
Ethyl chloride, 183, *et seq.*
combined with nitrous oxide, 190
with ether, 201
freezing anæsthesia by, 301
Eucain, 262
Excitement, (*see* Struggling)
Extraction of teeth (*see* Dental anæsthesia)
Eye reflexes, definition of, 49
local anæsthesia of, 286

F

Face, adaptation of masks to, 33, 78, 128
False anæsthesia, 63
Faradism of motor nerves in anæsthesia, 6
Fat patients, 229
Fear, effects of, 13
prevention of, 18, 64
Feeble patients, 254
Ferguson, Dr W. J., 133
Fingers, regional anæsthesia for, 275
Flame, open, dangers of, 113, 163
Forceps, tongue, 37
Foreign bodies in the larynx, 25
Freezing analgesia, 301
Fright (*see* Fear)

G

Gags, 40
Gardner, Mr Bellamy, 35, 37, 126
Gases in blood (*see* Blood gases)
Gas-pains, prevention of, 70
Gas and air, 81
and ether, 200
and ethyl chloride, 201
and oxygen, 88
Gasping, 62
Genito-urinary operations, 254
Gibbs, Dr J. H., 186
Glossotilt, 37
Glottis, spasm of, 26, 39, 157
Goitre, anæsthesia for, 231-277
Goitre, exophthalmic, 13, 27, 249
Grey & Parsons on shock, 9
Guy, Dr Wm., 190
Guy-Ross, gas oxygen method, 193
Gwathmey, warmed ether vapour, 136
synergistic analgesia, 69
gas and oxygen, 105
oil-ether, 142

H

Hæmorrhage, as a factor in shock production, 13
observation of, by anæsthetist, xi, 57
Hæmorrhoids, local anæsthesia for, 284
Harcourt, Vernon, 172
Head and neck operations, positions for, 229
Head and neck raising, 229, 233
lowering, 166, 211
extra pillow in deep-chested patients, 227
Heart, failure in asphyxia, 28
observation of, 57
action of ether upon, 117
of chloroform upon, 165
of ethyl chloride upon, 184
failure of, in secondary syncope, 208
Heart disease, anæsthetics in, 253
Henderson, Yandell, 15, 46
Hernia, local anæsthesia in, 282-283
Heroin, 68
Hewit, Sir Frederick, 34, 76, 92, 122, 306
Hill's direct laryngoscope, 155
Hill, Professor Leonard, 166-182
Hornabrook, 133
Hypnotics, 19, 65
Hypodermic medication, 19, 66

I

Infiltration analgesia, 264
Inhibition, vagal, 166, 207, 210

Intestinal obstruction, 204
Intra-nasal surgery, 231, 248, 286
Intra-pharyngeal anæsthetics, 161
Insulin, 226, 254
Intratracheal method, 146
  Kelly's instrument for, 148
  Shipway's, 153
  Mott's, 158, 313
Inversion, Leonard Hill's experiments upon, 166

J

Jactitations, 29, 80
Jaundice, 222
Jaws, clenching of, 25, 129
  falling back of, 25
  operations upon, 247
  management of, in anæsthesia, 33, 129
Johnston, Dr J., 246
Joints, anæsthesia in dislocation of, 243
Junker's inhaler, 179

K

Kidney, operations upon, 254
Kelly's intratracheal instrument, 150

L

Labour, anæsthesia in, 235
Lamb, Dr David, 217
Laryngeal stridor, 26, 39, 62, 225
Levy, Goodman, 167, 174, 179, 213
Light anæsthesia dangers of,, in chloroform, 12, 168
Light reflex, 51
Local anæsthetics, 257, *et seq.*
Lumbar puncture, site for, 291
Lungs, ventilation of, by normal breathing, 145
Lymphatism, 214

M

Mackenzie, Dr Ross, on gas-oxygen for children, 244
M'Kesson, on estimation of shock, 13
Marshall, Mr Geoffrey, 102
Masks for chloroform, 176
  for ether, 126
  for perhalation method, 44
Massage of heart, 213
Mechanical asphyxia, 25
Meltzer and Auer, on intratracheal method, 145
Menstruation, 255
Mixtures, C.E., 132, 196, 199
  of nitrous oxide and oxygen, 88
  of nitrous oxide and ethyl chloride, 190
Morphine, 19, 66, 218
Moseley pump, 247
Mott, Dr Clarence, 158, 313
Mouth, operations upon, 247
Mouth props, 34, 35
Mucus in air-passages, 25, 61
Musculo-spiral paralysis, 227
Muscles in anæsthesia, 5, 29, 55
  rigidity of, in anoxæmia, 29, 59
  tremor of, 58

N

Nasal breathing, 36, 248
Nasal method for $N_2O$, 85
Naso-pharyngeal catarrh, 218
Nasal tube, Dr Silk's, 36
Neck, position of, 33
  position for operation upon, 229
  tumours and other swellings in, 27, 249
Nephritis, 119, 254
Nerve cells, in shock, 16, 17
Nervous system, effects of anæsthetics upon, 4, 6, 116
Nerves, peripheral, 6
Nerve blocking, 19, 268
Nicloux, on distribution of anæsthetics in body, 6
Night crowing, 215
Nitrous oxide, 71
  with air, 81
  with ether, 200
  with ethyl chloride, 190
  nasal, 85

Nitrous oxide, physiology of, 71
contra-indications to, 83
Nitrous oxide and oxygen, 12, 20, 88
blood gasses in, 110
for use in major surgery, 107
with ethyl chloride, 193
various systems for, 98, 101
Nose, operations upon, 231, 248
Novocain, 20, 260

O

Obesity, 229
Observation of normal case, 51
Obstruction, intestinal, 204
respiratory, 25, 205, 249
Oil-ether, 142
Ogston, on open ether, 130
Oligæmia in shock, 14
Omnopon, 68
Open method, definition of, 44
O'Malley's technique for intranasal surgery, 231
Ormsby's Inhaler, 124, 200
Over-dosage, 56, 165
with nitrous oxide, 80
Oxygen, reduction in blood in anæsthesia, 309
lack of (*see* Anoxæmia)
as a relief in asphyxia, 31, 39
to old patients, 244
with nitrous oxide, 88
with nitrous oxide and ethyl chloride, 193

P

Patella reflex, 5
Pembrey and Shipway, on warming vapours, 136
Percentages of chloroform, 165, *et seq.*
of ether, 140, 306
Perhalation method, definition of, 44
ether (*see* Open ether)
Phenomena of anæsthesia, normal, 51
abnormal, 57
of nitrous oxide, 79
of ethyl chloride, 187
Pericarditis as a cause of death, 253
Phillip's artificial air-way, 35, 232
Physiology of anæsthetic drugs, 1
of asphyxia, 27
of chloroform, 164
of ether, 116
of ethyl chloride, 183
of nitrous oxide, 71
Phthisis, 250
Pinson's ether bomb, 140
Pneumonia, post-anæsthetic, 216
Position in anæsthesia, 227
Positive pressure in nitrous oxide, 79
in nitrous oxide and oxygen, 91
Post-chloroform poisoning, 221
Pregnancy, 256
Preliminary hypodermic medication, 64
Primary synocope, 166, 207
Prostatectomy, 255
Protection from shock by general anæsthetics, 12
Pulse, clinical observation of, 12 (*see also* Circulation)
Pupil, light reflex of, 51
size of, 54
in asphyxia, 28
Purging before anæsthetics, 64

Q

Quinine and urea hydrochloride, 262

R

Rebreathing method, 45
in nitrous oxide, 79
in nitrous oxide and oxygen, 93
Rectal administration of ether, 142
Reflexes, as a cause of shock, 10
order of disappearance of, 5
Reflex, conjunctival, 50, 55
corneal, 50, 55
light, 51, 55
patella, 5
skin, 57
Reflex syncope, 13, 167, 209, 255

Regional anæsthesia, 268
Repeated administrations, 89, 225
Respiration, arrest of, 206
increased rate of, 23, 60
increased depth of, 22, 60
artificial, 211
blowing, 53, 135
crowing, 26, 39, 255
Cheyne-Stokes, 31
different effects of $CO_2$ excess and $O_2$ want, 23
effect of morphia and chloroform upon, 67, 131
normal in anæsthesia, 53, 55
obstructed, 25, 205, 249
shallow, 60, 67
Respiration, physics of natural, 145
reflex arrest of, 61, 254
Respiratory abnormalities, minor, 59
major, 205
Respiratory system, effects of ether upon, 116
after-effects of anæsthetics upon, 216
Respiratory centre — normal mechanism of control, 22
in deep anæsthesia, 27
reflex inhibition of, 61
Rigidity of muscles in asphyxia, 29, 59
in second stage, 52

S

Sacral anæsthesia, 287-297
Schæffer, Prof., 166
Schimmelbusch's mask, 44, 176
Scopolamine, 67, 154, 236
Secondary syncope, 28, 207
Selection of anæsthetic, 241
Semi-open method, 45
Septic cases, 13, 88, 225, 254
Sequences, 199, *et seq.*
Sequelæ of anæsthesia, 216
Sex, relation of anæsthesia to, 244
Shipway, Dr, 137, 153
(*see also* Pembrey & Shipway)
Shock, 8
prevention of, 18
difference between syncope and, 11, 209
Short, Mr Rendle, 17, 122
Sickness (*see* Vomiting)
Sighing, 62
Sight-feed machines for gas-oxygen, 101
Signs of anæsthesia, 49, 80, 96
Silk, Dr J. W., 36, 131
Single dose anæsthetics, 47, 242
Sitting posture, 229
Spinal anæsthesia, 287
Stages of anæsthesia, 49
Starvation, a cause of shock, 13
of acidosis, 223
Status lymphaticus, 214
Stertor, 62, 80
Stimuli from field of operations, 8, *et seq.*
Stomach tube, before operation, 204
Stovaine, 261
Stridor (*see* Laryngeal stridor)
Struggling, 49, 52
Strychnine, 212
Sugar, before operation, 66
in relation to acidosis, 223
Swallowing, movements of, 52
Sylvester's method of artificial respiration, 211
Synergistic analgesia, 69, 110, 221
Syncope, 206
Syringe for local anæsthesia, 265
for spinal anæsthesia, 289

T

Teeth, danger of dropping into larynx, 25
extraction of, (*see* Dental anæsthesia)
Teter, Dr, on gas-oxygen, 97
Thomson, Professor Alexis, x., 19, 229
Thomson, Dr Torrance, 146
Thoracic operations, local anæsthesia for, 278
Three-way tap for $N_2O$, 76
Guy's modification of, 191
Thyroid gland (*see* Goitre)
Time afforded by single dose anæsthetics, 242

Tongue, falling back of, 25
forceps, 37
local anæsthesia of, 284
operations upon, 147, 179, 247
Tonsils and adenoids, 189, 248
Tracheotomy, 206, 276
Tremor, ether, 58
Trendelenberg posture, 228
Tropoacocaine, 261
Twilight sleep, 68, 236

U

Urine, secretion of, prevented by morphia, 255

V

Vagus nerve, 166, 210
Valved method, features of, 45
Vapour method, ether, 135
ethyl chloride, 186
Vapour strength in induction, 2
Vasomotor system, in asphyxia, 27, 28
in nitrous oxide, 71
in shock, 14
Venesection in syncope, 213
Veronal, 19
Vicious circle of asphyxia, 32, 71
Vital medullary centres, 5
Vomiting, 61, 203, 219

W

Wallis, on chemistry of ether, 115
Warming of anæsthetic vapours, 91, 101, 136
Wedge for opening clenched jaws, 39
Withdrawal of anæsthetic during breath-holding, 169
Wood, Mr W. Quarry, 257-301

Printed by J. & J. Gray, St James Place Edinburgh.

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

Author Ross, J. Stuart
Title Handbook of anaesthetics.
195415
MT
R.
DATE.